A COMPARATIVE STUDY OF ENGLISH AND KURDISH CONNECTIVES IN NEWSPAPER OPINION ARTICLES

Thesis submitted for the degree of

Doctor of Philosophy

at the University of Leicester

by

Rashwan Ramadan Salih BA, MA

School of English
University of Leicester

2014
A comparative study of English and Kurdish connectives in newspaper opinion articles

Abstract
This thesis is a comparative study that investigates English and Kurdish connectives which signal conjunctive relations in online newspaper opinion articles. This study utilises the Hallidayan framework of connectives in light of the principles of Relevance Theory established by Sperber and Wilson (1995). That is, connectives are considered in terms of their procedural meanings; i.e. the different interpretations they signal within different contexts, rather than their conceptual meanings. It finds that Halliday and Hasan’s (1976) classification of conjunctive relations and connectives needs to be modified, in order to lay out a clearer classification of English connectives that could account for their essential characteristics and properties. This modified classification would also help classify Kurdish connectives with greater accuracy. The comparison between connectives from both languages is examined through the use of translation techniques such as creating paradigms of correspondence between the equivalent connectives from both languages (Aijmer et al, 2006). Relevance Theoretic framework shows that any given text consists of two segments (S1 and S2), and these segments are constrained by different elements according to the four sub-categories of conjunctive relations. Different characteristics of connectives are considered in relation to the different subcategories of the Hallidayan framework of the conjunctive relations as follows: additive: the semantic content of the segments S1 and S2; adversative: the polysemy of the connectives; causal-conditional: iconicity in the order of the segments and temporal: the time scenes in the segments S1 and S2.

The thesis comprises eight chapters. Chapter One introduces Kurds and Kurdish language, provides the rationale for conducting this project, and outlines the research aims and questions. Chapter Two reviews the existing research on connectives in particular and discourse markers in general. Chapter Three outlines the data and the combined methodology used in the following chapters. Chapters Four, Five, Six and Seven are dedicated to the four subcategories of conjunctive relations and connectives: additive, adversative, causal-conditional and temporal relations respectively. Finally, Chapter Eight reflects on the contribution of the research to the field in terms of findings and methodology and gives suggestions for future research.

Rashwan Salih
Acknowledgements

I owe a great deal of gratitude to many people who supported me in completing this project. First and foremost, I would like to thank my supervisor, Dr. Ruth Page, for all the time, energy and devotion she put into this thesis during the past three years. I also would like to thank my sponsor, KRG's Ministry of Higher Education and Scientific Research, for their continuous financial support during this research project. I would not have been able to study in the UK if it was not for their generous support.

I am indebted to Dr Wrya Ali for his support and comments and for being the local advisor for my thesis. I am also grateful for the support of the Kurdish translators for participating in the translation task in the current thesis. Their contribution to this project is highly appreciated. Many thanks to Ms Joanne Payton for the enormous help I received from her in proofreading this thesis word by word. I must not forget the endless support of my family; my wife and children, who have endured me during the past three years. My parents, sisters and my brother who have always been there for me and encouraging me throughout my study abroad.

Last but not least, the intensive support programmes and training workshops at the University of Leicester are highly appreciated which have helped me throughout the process of planning, writing and completing the current project. Many thanks for all staff members at the School of English for their continuous support and their devotion in supporting all postgraduate students in general and international students in particular.
Table of contents

ABSTRACT .................................................................................................................. II

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS ............................................................................................ III

TABLE OF CONTENTS ............................................................................................... IV

LIST OF TABLES .......................................................................................................... VII

LIST OF FIGURES ........................................................................................................ VII

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS .......................................................................................... VIII

CHAPTER ONE: INTRODUCTION .............................................................................. 1

1.0 INTRODUCTION .................................................................................................... 1

1.1 KURDS AND KURDISH LANGUAGE .................................................................. 1

1.1.1 Kurdish alphabets ......................................................................................... 5

1.1.2 Kurdish grammar .......................................................................................... 8

1.2 RATIONALE .......................................................................................................... 9

1.3 RESEARCH QUESTIONS ..................................................................................... 10

1.4 AIMS AND CONTRIBUTIONS OF THE STUDY ............................................... 10

1.5 THESIS OUTLINE .............................................................................................. 12

CHAPTER TWO: LITERATURE REVIEW .................................................................. 13

2.0 INTRODUCTION .................................................................................................... 13

2.1 THEORETICAL BACKGROUND OF CONJUNCTIVE RELATIONS AND CONNECTIVES 13

2.1.1 Definitions of connectives ............................................................................ 14

2.1.2 Properties of connectives ............................................................................ 17

2.1.2.1 Syntactic properties .................................................................................. 17

2.1.2.2 Semantic properties .................................................................................. 19

2.2 CONNECTIVES ACROSS LANGUAGES ............................................................. 20

2.3 COHESION AND COHERENCE ......................................................................... 23

2.4 A RELEVANCE-BASED APPROACH TO CONNECTIVES .................................... 26

2.5 THE USE OF TRANSLATION AS A TOOL TO STUDY CONNECTIVES .................. 28

2.6 HALLIDAY AND HASAN’S (1976) CLASSIFICATION OF CONJUNCTIVE RELATIONS 29

2.7 REFORMULATION OF HALLIDAY AND HASAN’S (1976) CLASSIFICATION OF CONJUNCTIVE RELATIONS 34

2.7.1 Additive .......................................................................................................... 35

2.7.2 Adversative .................................................................................................... 36

2.7.3 Causal-conditional ......................................................................................... 37

2.7.4 Temporal ......................................................................................................... 38

2.8 GENRE .................................................................................................................. 39
CHAPTER THREE: DATA AND METHODOLOGY ................................................................. 43
  3.0 INTRODUCTION ................................................................................................. 43
  3.1 COMPARATIVE STUDY ...................................................................................... 43
  3.2 METHODS OF GATHERING DATA ................................................................. 44
    3.2.1 Selection criteria for the newspapers ...................................................... 44
    3.2.2 Selection criteria for the opinion articles ................................................. 45
    3.2.3 Selection criteria for the connectives ....................................................... 47
    3.2.4 Selection criteria for the translators ....................................................... 49
  3.3 METHODS OF DATA ANALYSIS ..................................................................... 50
    3.3.1 Text segmentation ................................................................................... 50
    3.3.2 Coding ...................................................................................................... 51
    3.3.3 Translation as a practice ........................................................................... 52
    3.3.4 Application of Relevance Theory to modify Halliday and Hasan’s (1976) classification of conjunctive relations ....................................................... 59
  3.4 CONCLUSIONS ................................................................................................. 61

CHAPTER FOUR: ADDITIVE RELATIONS IN ENGLISH AND KURDISH ......................... 62
  4.0 INTRODUCTION ................................................................................................. 62
  4.1 SIMPLE ADDITIVE RELATION ...................................................................... 66
    4.1.1 Additive .................................................................................................... 67
    4.1.2 Alternative ................................................................................................ 75
    4.1.3 Negative ................................................................................................... 78
  4.2 COMPLEX ADDITIVE RELATION .................................................................. 80
    4.2.1 Additive .................................................................................................... 82
    4.2.2 Alternative ................................................................................................ 98
  4.3 APPOSITIONAL ADDITIVE RELATION ......................................................... 100
    4.3.1 Expository ................................................................................................ 100
    4.3.2 Exemplificatory ........................................................................................ 106
  4.4 COMPARATIVE ADDITIVE RELATION .......................................................... 109
    4.4.1 Similar ...................................................................................................... 110
    4.4.2 Dissimilar .................................................................................................. 111
  4.5 CONCLUSION .................................................................................................... 114

CHAPTER FIVE: ADVERSATIVE RELATIONS IN ENGLISH AND KURDISH .................... 116
  5.0 INTRODUCTION ............................................................................................... 116
  5.1 CONTRARY TO EXPECTATION ....................................................................... 121
5.2 CONTRASTIVE ........................................................................................................ 132
5.3 CORRECTION ........................................................................................................ 139
5.4 DISMISSAL / CANCELLATION ............................................................................. 145
5.5 CONCLUSION ........................................................................................................ 150

CHAPTER SIX: CAUSAL-CONDITIONAL RELATIONS IN ENGLISH AND KURDISH .......... 151
6.0 INTRODUCTION ..................................................................................................... 151
6.1 THE LINK BETWEEN CAUSAL AND CONDITIONAL RELATIONS ...................... 156
6.2 CAUSAL RELATIONS ............................................................................................ 158
   6.2.1 Iconic causal relation ................................................................................. 159
   6.2.2 Non-iconic causal relation ....................................................................... 175
6.3 CONDITIONAL RELATIONS ................................................................................ 183
   6.3.1 Iconic conditional relation ........................................................................ 183
   6.3.2 Non-iconic conditional relations ............................................................... 193
6.4 CONCLUSIONS .................................................................................................... 197

CHAPTER SEVEN: TEMPORAL RELATIONS IN ENGLISH AND KURDISH ......................... 199
7.0 INTRODUCTION ..................................................................................................... 199
7.1 SEQUENTIAL ......................................................................................................... 205
7.2 TERMINAL ............................................................................................................ 214
7.3 SIMULTANEOUS .................................................................................................. 218
7.4 CONCLUSIONS ..................................................................................................... 226

CHAPTER EIGHT: CONCLUSIONS ............................................................................. 227
8.0 INTRODUCTION ..................................................................................................... 227
8.1 CLASSIFICATION OF ENGLISH AND KURDISH CONNECTIVES ............................ 227
   8.1.1 Taxonomies ............................................................................................... 227
   8.1.2 Frequencies .............................................................................................. 231
8.2 REFINEMENTS OF HALLIDAY AND HASAN’S CLASSIFICATION OF CONJUNCTIVE RELATIONS .................................................................................................... 233
   8.2.1 Additive connectives and relations ............................................................ 233
   8.2.2 Adversative connectives and relations ...................................................... 234
   8.2.3 Causal-conditional connectives and relations ......................................... 235
   8.2.4 Temporal connectives and relations ......................................................... 236
8.3 CONCLUDING REMARKS ON THE METHODOLOGY ...................................... 237
8.4 IMPLICATIONS FOR TRANSLATION .................................................................. 238
8.5 FUTURE WORK ..................................................................................................... 239

APPENDIX ONE: ABBREVIATION OF MORPHOLOGICAL GLOSSES (LEIPZIG) ............ 242
APPENDIX TWO: LIST OF THE ENGLISH AND KURDISH OPINION ARTICLES ........... 245

BIBLIOGRAPHY ........................................................................................................ 257
List of tables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Table 1</td>
<td>Kurdish alphabets (Latin and Arabic scripts)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 2</td>
<td>Conjunctive relations in Halliday and Hasan (1976: 242-243)</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 3</td>
<td>Circulation figures of the English newspapers as shown in the national dailies’ website</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 4</td>
<td>Frequencies of English and Kurdish connectives in argumentative and narrative text types</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 5</td>
<td>Statistics of the translation choices for English connectives by 32 Kurdish translators</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 6</td>
<td>English and Kurdish additive relations and connectives</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 7</td>
<td>English and Kurdish adversative connectives</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 8</td>
<td>A modified classification of causal-conditional relations in English and Kurdish</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 9</td>
<td>Temporal relations and connectives in English and Kurdish</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 10</td>
<td>Conjunctive relations and connectives in English and Kurdish</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 11</td>
<td>Percentages of the number of Kurdish translators who made less frequent translation choices (n = 32)</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

List of figures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIGURE</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Figure 1</td>
<td>Map of Kurdistan</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 2</td>
<td>Procedural meanings of but</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3</td>
<td>Frequencies of English and Kurdish connectives</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## List of abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviations</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>First Person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1PP</td>
<td>First person plural pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1SP</td>
<td>First person singular pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Second Person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2PP</td>
<td>Second person plural pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2SP</td>
<td>Second person singular pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Third Person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3PP</td>
<td>Third person plural pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3SP</td>
<td>Third person singular pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGR</td>
<td>Agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ART</td>
<td>Article</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLF</td>
<td>Classifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CR</td>
<td>Conjunctive Relations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEF</td>
<td>Definite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDF</td>
<td>Indefinite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INF</td>
<td>Infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KA</td>
<td>Kurdish Academy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KRG</td>
<td>Kurdistan Regional Government</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSS</td>
<td>Possessive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRF</td>
<td>Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRO</td>
<td>Progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REFL</td>
<td>Reflective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RT</td>
<td>Relevance Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Segment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S1</td>
<td>Segment 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S2</td>
<td>Segment 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SFL</td>
<td>Systemic Functional Grammar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER ONE: INTRODUCTION

1.0 Introduction

This study is a comparative account of the connectives found in English and Kurdish online newspaper opinion articles. It outlines the similarities and differences between and among the connectives in the two languages in terms of grammatical function, semantic value and pragmatic function. The study follows the principles of text linguistics, which views connected discourse as central to understanding language and grammar. More specifically, the study adopts Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification of conjunctive relations, in order to establish a classification of Kurdish and English connectives that signal conjunctive relations in terms of additive, adversative, causal-conditional and temporal relations within written text, specifically online newspaper opinion articles. In order to account for the main characteristics and properties of the connectives in both languages, Relevance Theory framework (henceforth, RT) is applied to the Hallidayan classification of connectives, which outlines the structural properties of the connectives and also illuminates their semantic features and pragmatic functions. Then the study investigates the behaviour of the English and Kurdish connectives in translation in order to validate the newly created list of the Kurdish connectives, and to provide examples for analysis. In addition, the study identifies problems and suggests some solutions regarding the translation of connectives from English into Kurdish and vice versa. The following sections in this chapter provide an introduction to the Kurdish language, set out the study’s research questions and contribution to the body of literature on connectives, and explain the rationale for the study and the structure of the current thesis.

1.1 Kurds and Kurdish language

Kurdish, or the Kurdish language, is used to refer collectively to a number of related dialects spoken by the Kurdish peoples. It belongs to the north-western sub-group of the Iranian languages, which in turn belongs to the Indo-Iranian branch of the Indo-European family. Kurdish dialects are mainly spoken in Kurdistan: a region which includes regions of Iraq, Iran, Syria, Turkey and Armenia. Kurdish holds an official status in Iraq as a national language, alongside Arabic. It is recognized in Iran as a regional language, and
in Armenia as a minority language. Using Kurdish in Turkey is not fully allowed yet. It is stated in the Turkish constitution that use of Kurdish compromises "the integrity of the state and its territory and national security" (Basimevi, 1978: 26). In this regard, Erbey (2007: 12) states in his report published in November, 2007 by the Institute for international assistance and solidarity (IFIAS Brussels):

It is time for a change. Ridiculous laws regulating the use of a language which is the mother tongue for millions of people in Turkey have to disappear […] it is time to act. People should no longer be scared to use their local language in public, in meetings, in media, everywhere. Children and youth must have access to Kurdish books and libraries. Turkish and Kurdish language must have curricula in schools and universities in Turkey.

Similar to the situation of Kurds and Kurdish language in Turkey, the Syrian authority recognised Kurds as "foreign citizens", i.e., they were deprived from obtaining citizenship in Syria until the unrest in 2012. They were not allowed to speak Kurdish in public institutions or any other official context. The arrest of Siyamend Ibrahim in 2004 – a Kurdish writer from Syria’s Kurdish region – for the ‘crime’ of possessing books in the Kurdish language highlighted the fact that the Kurdish language and culture was effectively illegal in Syria, and formed a clear indication that freedom for Kurds in Syria was very limited. Now, there is a fragile freedom for Kurds to enjoy their rights and use Kurdish in Syria. However, the future for Kurds in Syria remains unknown, due to the current parlous situation in the country.

Unlike the situation of Kurds and Kurdish language in the Kurdish territories in Turkey and Syria, Kurds in Iraq enjoy freedom of a semi-autonomous status. After the Allied Operation Iraqi Freedom campaign in 2003, and with the adoption of a new constitution for Iraq, the Kurdish language is now recognized as an official language in Iraq, on an equal footing with Arabic. In fact, the new Iraqi passport is written in English, Arabic and Kurdish. Kurdish is the administrative language of the Kurdistan Regional Government (KRG), used in schools and in other educational institutions as the primary medium of instruction. Moreover, Kurdish is the language of media in this region, which includes hundreds of newspapers, magazines, and online newspapers, and several satellite TV stations. Kurdish is mainly used in the areas dominantly populated by Kurds, such as
Hewlêr, Sulaimani, Duhok and other towns in between these three major cities. Figure 1 shows the areas in which Kurds live and is mainly used.

![Map of Kurdistan](http://zagrosphoto.com/?level=picture&id=1752)

**Figure 1: Map of Kurdistan**

The shaded area on this map represents the region in which Kurds live, with blue points marking the major cities of Kurdistan. Black lines represent the national borders dividing Kurdistan. After the 1991 uprising in the Iraqi Kurdistan Region, an autonomous Kurdish administration was established, the Kurdish language was officially introduced into schools and Kurds freed to use their language, both within the Kurdish region and across Iraq as a whole.

Most Kurds are either bilingual or multilingual, speaking the language of their respective nation of origin, such as Arabic, Turkish or Farsi as a second language alongside their native Kurdish, while those in Diaspora communities often speak three or more languages. The number of Kurds living in Southwest Asia is estimated at around 35 million, with another million living in the Kurdish Diaspora (USA, CIA World Fact Book, 2007). According to the CIA World Fact book, Kurds are the fourth largest ethnic group in the

---

1 [http://zagrosphoto.com/?level=picture&id=1752](http://zagrosphoto.com/?level=picture&id=1752)
Middle East after Arabs, Persians and Turks. McDowall estimated that in 1991 the Kurds comprised "19% of the population in Turkey, 23% in Iraq, 10% in Iran, and 8% in Syria" (1992: 12). He placed the total number of Kurds at 22.5 million, with 48% of the Kurdish population living in Turkey, 18% in Iraq, 24% in Iran, and 4% in Syria. Kurds in these areas speak several dialects of Kurdish which are relatively mutually understood by Kurds. The classification of Kurdish dialects is a contentious topic, but Mackenzie’s (1961: 177) model is preferable for its logical grouping of the dialects in their respective areas, such as:

1- Northern Dialect (Kurmanji)
2- Central Dialect (Sorani)
3- Southern Dialects (Hawramani)

My research on the Kurdish language will focus on the central dialect (Sorani), because it is the language used in education, media and administration within the Kurdistan region of Iraq. Unfortunately, there is no detailed study on how intelligible the Kurdish dialects are among each other. However, as a Kurd having lived in the Iraqi Kurdistan Region all my life, I would estimate that the North and Central dialects are mutually intelligible, but that the Southern ones have comparably less points of similarity. This is because there has been more contact between the Northern and Central dialects than between those of the South and North. In addition, the three dialect groups mentioned above have been influenced by neighbouring languages such as Turkish, Farsi and Arabic. This complexity makes the linguistic study of Kurdish as a whole language very challenging, with particular relevance to the study of connectives. Thus this thesis does not attempt to study Kurdish connectives in all dialects. Instead it will focus on the connectives that are used in Sorani written texts, specifically online newspaper opinion articles. Sorani dialect is one written form of the central group of dialects, which uses Arabic orthography and script. It is taught in schools up to the 12th grade and continues to be taught at university, mainly in the first year.

Although Kurdish is the sole language of Kurds, there are other ethnic minorities in the region who use Kurdish as their second language after their mother tongue, such as Turkmen, Assyrians and Kaldanians. The majority of Kurds are bilingual, speaking Kurdish, their mother tongue, and Arabic. However, Arabs generally do not speak Kurdish. There may be a couple of hundred Arabs who can speak Kurdish, because they live in the Kurdistan Region or do business with Kurdish people. The burden was always on the
Kurds of Iraq to learn the language of the ‘invader’, as under the Ottoman Empire they were obliged to speak Turkish, and under the successive Arab authorities including the Ba’ath Regime they were obliged to speak Arabic. Whenever a Kurd needs to speak with an Arab, bilingualism is required. However, when an Arab needs to speak with a Kurd, Arabic tends to be the lingua franca. The situation is reflected within the minorities in Kurdistan Region when speaking with Kurds. Whenever a Kurd needs to speak with a Turkman, Assyrian or Cûldanian, Kurdish is used. The majority of Kurdish population were bilingual before the uprising in 1991, because the Arabic language was the language of schools, administration and media. After 1991, with the widespread tendency towards nationhood among the Kurds, there was and still is a remarkable decline in the number of Arabic speakers among Kurds, as now it is no longer the language of power, and it is not imposed upon the Kurds. The Faylis who live in the central and east of Iraq and the Shabaks who live in the north western part of Iraq are mainly bilingual or can only speak Arabic. However, they are all identified as Kurds (Hassanpour, 1992: 53).

There is a considerable literary tradition among Kurds in the Kurdistan Region. The first written Kurdish literary masterpiece was Mem and Zîn by Ahmadi Khani (AD 935 – 1010). Kurdish was first used in the media in 1897 when the first Kurdish newspaper was established entitled "Kurdistan" (Dzayee, 2011). Nevertheless, Hassanpour states that although the question of nationality among Kurds is strictly linked to speaking Kurdish, there are many Kurds "who have not learnt to speak Kurdish for any reason and still they claim to be recognised as Kurds, such as Faylis and Shabaks" (1992: 64).

1.1.1 Kurdish alphabets

The current alphabet for the Kurdish writing system is a modified form of Arabic with some additional graphemes, because they do not exist in Arabic, and some are excluded as they do not exist in Kurdish. However Kurdish scholars, writing in an English context, have adopted Latin for Kurdish texts in order to avoid encountering typographic problems in their documents. Table 1 (quoted from Ameen, 2009: 11) shows a comparison between the two sets of alphabets used by Northern, Central and Southern groups of the Kurdish language.

<p>| Table 1 Kurdish alphabets (Latin and Arabic scripts) | 5 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phonemic Transcription</th>
<th>Northern Kurdish (Latin Kurmanji)</th>
<th>Central and Southern dialects (Sorani Dialect)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>A a</td>
<td>نا</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>B b</td>
<td>ب</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ج</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>D d</td>
<td>د</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ه</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ی</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ی</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ج</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ز</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ک</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ل</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ل</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>لم</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ن</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>و</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ب</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ئی</td>
<td>ق</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This table is presented here to show the reader the differences between the writing scripts among the Kurdish dialects. Moreover, the original Kurdish text samples provided in the current thesis were written in Arabic but have been changed to Latin script. The rationale for changing the scripts from Arabic writing system to Latin writing system is for the reader to understand the translation format of the text samples and to avoid the problems with Arabic scripts in English texts. That is, when Kurdish is written in Latin script the text would start from left to right, but when it is written in an Arabic script it would start from right to left and thus will not effectively show the comparison of the word order between

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kurdish Script</th>
<th>Latin Script</th>
<th>Arabic Script</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>R r</td>
<td>ر</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ū</td>
<td>Doesn’t exist (ř)</td>
<td>ܨ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>S s</td>
<td>س</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ņ</td>
<td>Š š</td>
<td>ش</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>T t</td>
<td>ت</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Û</td>
<td>U u</td>
<td>و</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ūː</td>
<td>Ŭ ū</td>
<td>وو</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>V v</td>
<td>ف</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>W w</td>
<td>و</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>X x</td>
<td>خ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>Z z</td>
<td>ز</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ž</td>
<td>Ž ž</td>
<td>ز</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>Ė Ė</td>
<td>ح</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ş</td>
<td>Ĩ Ĩ</td>
<td>ع</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x′</td>
<td>X x</td>
<td>غ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Doesn’t exist
English and Kurdish. Consequently, important features for recognizing connectives like textual sequence and positioning would not be understood easily.

1.1.2 Kurdish grammar

Knowledge of the principles of Sorani grammar would help us better understand the characteristics of the connectives, such as the position of the connectives and the grammatical structure of the text within which they operate. A detailed comparison of all the grammatical features of English and Kurdish is beyond the scope of this study. Both English and Standard Sorani are similar in lacking grammatical gender, but McCarus (1958: 71) writes that the morphology of Kurdish is quite different from English. Among the differences is that the modifier-head relation in a Kurdish nominal phrase is opposite to the English one, in terms of position, such as:

Kuřî baş.

Boy 3DET of POSS good 3DET

Good boy

The normal sentence structure in Kurdish is subject–object–verb, whereas in English it is subject–verb–object. A comparison between the two can be seen by comparing the word-by-word translation of the following sentence with the idiomatic English translation (Fattah, 1987: 16):

Azad sêwekei xûard.

Azadl apple-the-DEF-ART-3S-AGR ate

Azad ate the apple.

In addition to the differences in the grammatical patterns in English and Kurdish sentences, there are other typological differences. For instance, English is an analytical language, while Kurdish is semi-inflected, meaning that sentences in the Kurdish language can be written either fully inflected or uninflected. This is important to note, because some Kurdish connectives, such as ş, exist in the form of suffixes, not just as discrete words.
1.2 Rationale

Kurdish grammarians usually refer to conjunctions as Amrazi Peiwendî, Amrazi Bestîn or Amrazi lêkder, translated into English as *connective particles*. For most Kurdish linguists, conjunctions are treated as linking devices and their characteristics are studied as part of a structural approach to the language. The traditional Kurdish linguists were interested in Şitelkari, i.e. case or mood inflection in their descriptions of the conjunctions. This means that the communicative function conveyed by the conjunctions in discourse has been completely neglected or unobserved. However, the textual function of conjunctions in Kurdish has attracted several Kurdish discourse analysts' attention, such as Tofiq (2002), describing the structure of the relations within text; Ali (1992), describing conjunction and ellipsis in Kurdish; Mukiryani (2000), analysing the grammatical relations between Kurdish sentences and Dzayee (2011), investigating the styles of persuasion and its relation to pragmatics and rhetoric.

In contrast, the current study puts forward a detailed analysis of the syntactic, semantic and communicative features of connectives in Kurdish and English newspaper opinion articles. It will investigate the different functions that a single connective may have in different textual contexts and across both languages. In order to avoid the problems associated with the term "discourse marker", I will use the term "connective" to refer to the elements that signal conjunctive relations in the sample texts. Based on the classification in Halliday and Hasan (1976), connectives may signal one of these relations: *additive, adversative, causal-conditional* and *temporal*. Within these relations, there are sub-categories that signal conjunctive relations as well. The current thesis will divide the analysis into two aspects (macro and micro), with the former devoted to the distributions of the sub-types of the conjunctive relations and their division into sub-relations, and the latter to the distribution of the connectives among the sub-relations of the conjunctive relations. As far as the data is concerned, it is limited to one type of text to ensure the homogeneity of the corpus, because some connectives are "typical properties of particular text type and because the markers used in writing usually differ from those used in speech" (Brinton, 1996: 33).
1.3 Research questions

The current study addresses the following questions:

1- What are the connectives that signal conjunctive relations in Kurdish and English, and how frequently are they used?

2- How can Relevance Theory be used in combination with a Hallidayan framework in order to study connectives across the two languages?

3- What does translation add to the study of connectives in a cross-linguistic setting?

4- What problems do Kurdish translators encounter when translating connectives from English into Kurdish and vice versa?

1.4 Aims and contributions of the study

The current thesis has five major aims. First, it outlines the macro and micro levels of the conjunctive relations and establishes detailed classifications for English and Kurdish connectives that signal the four sub-types of the conjunctive relations. In addition, it will investigate the frequencies of each connective in both languages in order to outline the differences and similarities in the rate of using connectives within the data, and the implications of these frequencies for translation. Second, the thesis adopts Relevance Theory to account for the connectives which have been classified according to the Hallidayan framework, in order to examine their main characteristics. This is because connectives in the Hallidayan framework are mainly considered in terms of their grammatical functions, whereas Relevance Theory accounts for their grammatical functions as well as their semantic encoding and pragmatic function. Third, the comparative nature of the study requires the use of translation as a method of studying connectives in cross-linguistic settings. Fourth, the study attempts to outline the advantages of comparing the English connectives and conjunctive relations with their Kurdish counterparts. That is, the study tries to find out if comparing connectives between these two languages would contribute to a better understanding of connectives as a linguistic phenomenon. Consequently, the comparison would locate the problematic areas in translating connectives from English into Kurdish and vice versa and would find possible solutions for the issues that translators face.
The current study contributes to the study of Kurdish connectives specifically and connectives in general, the role of translation in the analysis of connectives and conjunctive relations and the refinements to the Hallidayan framework for text analysis. Kurdish connectives have not been studied in detail so far. The few Kurdish studies such as Mukiryani (2000), Shwani (2002), Tofiq (2002) and Abdullah (2003) have mentioned a limited number of connectives, but they have not provided a detailed account of the signalling potential of connectives. However, the current study provides a detailed analysis of connectives that signal conjunctive relations which could also be useful for future studies of Kurdish connectives. Another contribution of this thesis lies with the implications for translation, in which the study attempts to find out problematic areas in translating connectives between the two languages and ultimately suggests solutions for the problems. The problems and solutions identified through the translations undertaken as part of this thesis can be used in translator training and for pedagogical purposes.

Moreover, the use of translation in linguistic studies is an innovation in itself, which could highlight some of the problematic areas which arise when studying connectives, for example their polysemy and textual positioning. Moreover, the current study refines the Hallidayan framework of conjunctive relations through the Relevance Theoretic approach, in order to produce a fuller classification of connectives that signal conjunctive relations, not only taking into consideration the grammatical functions of connectives but also their semantic and pragmatic aspects.
1.5 Thesis outline

This thesis is divided into eight chapters. The introductory chapter provides contextual information about Kurds and Kurdish language in order to inform non-Kurdish readers about the language and its typography. Chapter Two reviews the most relevant studies conducted on connectives in English and previous research on Kurdish connectives. Chapter Three outlines the methods of data collection and data analysis undertaken in the current thesis. It draws on the combined research methodology in which the Hallidayan framework of conjunction and Relevance Theory's criteria for analysing connectives are combined. This methodology accounts for main characteristics and properties of English and Kurdish connectives and the relations they signal, including the grammatical, semantic and pragmatic aspects of the connectives.

Chapters Four, Five, Six and Seven correspond to the four sub-categories of conjunctive relations, namely additive, adversative, causal-conditional and temporal relations. Each type of relation is discussed contextualised with different aspects of the connectives’ characteristics. Chapter Four considers the semantic values of the two textual segments (S1 and S2) which are combined via an additive connective. Chapter Five deals with the polysemy of the adversative connectives in both languages which forms one of the main challenges for Kurdish translators. Chapter Six takes into consideration the textual sequences of S1 and S2 and the textual positioning of the connectives which play a vital role in determining the subtypes of the causal and conditional relations. Chapter Seven focuses on the time scenes and their sequences with the textual segments that are linked together by temporal connectives. The characteristics of connectives which are explored as a means of refining the Hallidayan conjunctive relations differ in their relative importance from category to category. For instance, the sequence of temporal scenes does not play a vital role in recognising an additive connective. Finally, Chapter Eight reviews the contribution of the thesis in term of the categorisation of English and Kurdish connectives that signal conjunctive relations, the combined methodology, data analysis, and the implications for translations and finally proposes other areas of research to be conducted in future studies.
CHAPTER TWO: LITERATURE REVIEW

2.0 Introduction

This chapter outlines the relevant literature on conjunctive relations and connectives in English and Kurdish. It paves the way for a reformulation of Halliday's system of conjunctions in light of the principles of Relevance Theory with a cross-linguistic examination depending on examples from both languages and translation data. First, the research relating to the study of connectives is presented. This is followed by a review of studies focused on written discourse and the role of connectives in text organisation in both languages. Lastly, the study outlines the ways in which Halliday and Hasan’s (1976) classification might need to be modified.

2.1 Theoretical background of conjunctive relations and connectives

Research on conjunctive relations, connectives and similar phenomena has expanded continually throughout the 1980s and 1990s. There is still growing interest in studying such phenomena in different fields, including discourse analysis, language acquisition and language pedagogy. Halliday and Hasan (1976) write that the term "conjunctive relations" refers to the cohesive elements that a writer uses in a text to convey a certain meaning, or to lead the reader to interpret a certain direction in the course of text development. According to Halliday and Hasan, conjunctive relations are divided into four main sub-relations, namely additive, adversative, causal-conditional and temporal. The sub-types are in turn further divided to include more specific types of relations which are signalled by linguistic elements called connectives. Connectives can be considered as a subset of a more general phenomenon called "discourse markers" or commonly referred to as DMs (cf. Fraser, 1999; Blakemore, 2000, 2002; Schiffrin 1987). The term discourse marker is used in the linguistics literature to cover a wide array of lexical items, ranging from interjections like hmm and oh! in spoken dialogue (Schiffrin, 1987), which convey specific meta-information about the utterance or the interpersonal relationship between discourse participants to prepositional phrases and conjunctions in spoken and written discourse like in addition to that, however, while, which are generally conceived as signalling the
coherence relations that relate to text segments (Halliday and Hasan 1976; Sanders et al 1992).

The dilemma around defining connectives has various dimensions, which reflect the grammatical, semantic and pragmatic qualities of these phenomena. For example, connectives are called *discourse markers, pragmatic markers* (Fraser, 1999), *functional pragmatic markers* (Mann and Thompson, 1987) or *discourse connectives* (Brinton, 1996) because they are found to function on the organisational level of discourse. Other researchers, such as Lenk (1998) Schourup (1999) and Redeker (1990), name them *directives* and *cue phrases* because they direct the reader/listener to a certain point according to the writer/speaker’s intentions. The following section deals with the aspects of the definitions most often debated along with the theoretical approaches taken previously to study connectives (such as coherence-based approaches, Relevance Theoretic framework and functional pragmatic theory). Finally, I evaluate which approach might be most effective to account for the connectives under investigation in both languages in this thesis.

### 2.1.1 Definitions of connectives

Researchers define connectives from grammatical, semantic and communicative perspectives and interpret connectives within various frameworks such as the Discourse Coherence Model, Rhetorical Structure Theory, Functional Pragmatic Model and Relevance Theory. For example, Hansen defines connectives as "linguistic items which fulfil a non-propositional, metadiscursive function, and whose scope is inherently variable, such that it may comprise both sub-sentential and supra-sentential units" (1998: 236). Hansen thus deals with connectives from a semantic point of view. According to him, connectives are processing orders intended to assist the reader in integrating the textual segment containing the connective into a coherent mental model of the unfolding text. However, he ignores the grammatical categories of various connectives, which could include word classes such as prepositional phrases and adverbs. Within this discussion, he also groups together a diverse range of phenomena, some of which are polysemous and have other uses which are not typically in line with the characteristics of connectives. Such an approach is also found elsewhere; Lamiroy and Swiggers suggest that connectives "cannot be described in morpho-syntactic terms" (1991: 123). They argue that items that
may be used as connectives may originate in different classes, where they have identical counterparts that are not used as connectives. Nonetheless, considering the grammatical functions of connectives and sentential position could help in classifying connectives, as in the work of Halliday and Hasan (1976).

Knott and Dale call connectives "cue phrases" and define them as "the set of lexical signals which make coherence relations explicit in surface text, including connectives, conjunctions, and subordinators" (1994:36). However, the classification of cohesive devices into connectives, conjunctions and subordinators causes confusion, because there are mismatches between these three categories. For instance, conjunctions and subordinators cannot be regarded as two separate categories, as "conjunction" is the umbrella term for "coordinators and subordinators" (Halliday, 2002: 67). According to Horn and Ward, connectives are referred to as "a syntactically heterogeneous class of expressions which are distinguished by their function in discourse and the kind of meaning they encode" (2005: 243). As for Blakemore, she does not attempt to define connectives, but describes them as "a heterogeneous class of linguistic entities" (2002: 23).

From a Relevance Theoretic perspective, Wilson and Sperber refer to connectives as stimulus and state that "use of an obvious stimulus may create precise and predictable expectations of relevance not raised by other stimuli" (2004: 617). For them, it is important to observe how the reader infers the writer's intended meaning and that connectives help the reader reach the relevance between textual segments more easily. Wilson and Sperber's definition is in line with Fraser's analysis of connectives, in which he states that "pragmatic markers do not contribute to the propositional meaning of a sentence but do contribute to the interpretation" (1996: 169). According to Fraser, connectives are grammatically separate from the sentences that contain them and even if deleted the meaning of the sentence will not be affected. Connectives participate in the interpretation of the text rather than forming a constituent of the sentence. Consequently, connectives are best seen as cohesive devices that ease the process of communication.

In the spoken mode, connectives are outlined from the interpersonal and conversational perspectives. The key studies on connectives used in spoken English are Schiffrin (1987) and Blakemore (2002). Schiffrin defines connectives as "sequentially dependent elements which bracket units of talk"(1987: 31). Schiffrin does not establish what the single unit of talk is, as she realizes that there are various units of talk that influence the use of
connectives. Nonetheless, Schiffrin also refers to connectives as "non-obligatory utterance initial items that function in relation to ongoing talk and text" (2006: 322). Her later definition comprises a set of linguistic expressions from different word classes, for instance conjunctions (and, but, or), interjections (oh, yeah), adverbs (now, then) and lexicalized phrases (Y'know, I mean). This classification is in line with Stubbs’ description, wherein connectives "are mainly interactional devices because they are largely restricted to spoken language" and "they are the boundaries of units of discourse larger than clauses or sentences; therefore they are found in spoken conversations to conjoin ideas between speakers" (1983: 69). Also, Redeker highlights connectives as being used to "relate utterances to the immediate context" (1990: 372). According to Redeker (1990), "the immediate context" can be thought of as the current common ground between the speaker and the hearer, that is, the knowledge that speakers have about each other and about the present situation in which they are involved. In a recent study, Heeman and Allen stated that connectives are "devices which are conjectured to give the hearer information about the discourse structure; they aid the hearer to understand the relationship between the present or new speech and what was previously said" (1999: 15). According to Heeman, connectives have various pragmatic functions in discourse, for example holding a turn, signalling an interruption in the discourse structure, signalling an acknowledgement or acceptance, stalling for time or to signal a speech repair.

Redeker critiques the analysis of connectives led by Schiffrin (1987) and offers several significant revisions. She suggests that "the core meaning should specify the marker's intrinsic contribution to the semantic representation that will constrain the contextual interpretation of the utterance" (Redeker, 1991:1164). The main concern about Shiffrin's (1987) definition of connectives is that she does not fully address the characteristics of connectives, because she deals with a limited number of connectives such as yeah, oh!, y'know which are used in a specific mode of communication. Redeker suggests that "what is needed is a clearer definition of the component of discourse coherence and a broader framework that embraces all connective expressions and is not restricted to an arbitrary selected subset" (1991:1167). Despite the richness of the interpersonal and conversational elements in spoken material, the connectives used in spoken mode such as oh!, hmm, y'know are not considered in the current study, due to the limitation of data to only written texts. Therefore, those studies that only focus on connectives used in spoken mode are not significantly relevant to the current thesis.
In written genres, the main function of connectives is "to connect parts of discourse in order to produce a cohesive and coherent text" (Halliday, 2004: 538). Halliday's approach to the classification of connectives is the most relevant description of the connectives that are considered in the current thesis. In addition, Fraser's (1999) definition of connectives elaborates the characteristics and functions of connectives under investigation in the current study. Since there is no single, unified definition of connectives, the present study follows Fraser’s definition, where he (1999: 931) refers to connectives as

A class of lexical expressions drawn primarily from the syntactic classes of conjunctions, adverbs, and prepositional phrases. With certain exceptions, they signal a relationship between the interpretation of the segment they introduce, S2, and the prior segment, S1. They have a core meaning, which is procedural, not conceptual, and their more specific interpretation is 'negotiated' by the context, both linguistic and conceptual.

Fraser's definition best describes the properties of the connectives under investigation in the current study. However, I have decided to use the term connective rather than discourse marker, as the term discourse marker seems to be a suitable term for spoken discourse. Drawing from Fraser's definition, the current thesis defines connectives as words and phrases that can be placed within the text to connect one sentence to another, or one paragraph to another, or even one idea to another. Connectives vary in terms of their grammatical status, for example they could be conjunctions, adverbials or prepositional phrases.

2.1.2 Properties of connectives

Connectives in general are multifunctional; there are certain connectives which could be polysemous and have various grammatical functions. The following sections outline the common properties of connectives under investigation in the current study.

2.1.2.1 Syntactic properties

The connectives in this study are from different grammatical classes ranging from simple conjunctions such as and, but, or, (w, belam, ya (n)); adjuncts including now, then, for instance (ësta, paşan, bo nimûne); nominal groups like the fact that (ewei ke) and
prepositional phrases for that reason (bo em mebeste). Nonetheless, they all have one function in common in that they operate on different levels of discourse to connect parts of a text at inter-sentential level. The connectives are involved in the cohesion and coherence of texts, i.e., "they link sentential constituents and contribute to the unity of the whole text" (Polanyi and Berg, 2003: 339). Originally, these items have grammatical classifications, but due to their textual functions in discourse, their grammatical functions are less relevant to the study of discourse. As a result, there is a distinction between the terms conjunction and connective. The former refers to the grammatical classification of items creating coordination and subordination within sentences and the latter refers to the cohesive devices that signal semantic relations above the clausal level including the relations between paragraphs, such as the additive, adversative, causal and temporal relations. However, while serving this similar function, connectives still retain their grammatical identities as conjunctions, adverbials and prepositional phrases. In this regard, Stubbs states that connectives have the "sequencing function of relating syntactic units and fitting them into a textual or discourse context" (1983: 68). Also, Quirk et al (1985: 631-2) point out that connectives, which they call "conjects", stand in "a detached and super-ordinate relation to the rest of the clause, and therefore cannot be made the focus of a cleft sentence, cannot be the basis of contrast in alternative interrogation or negation, and cannot be focused by subjuncts", as illustrated in examples 1, 2 and 3.

1) *It is nonetheless that you should send her the agenda.

2) *Should you send her the agenda nonetheless or therefore?

3) *You should only nonetheless send her the agenda.

Moreover, Fraser observes that connectives are grouped from different grammatical categories because of their pragmatic functions in discourse. Therefore, connectives cannot be analyzed "in the same way as any traditional grammatical category such as sentence, noun, or preposition" (Fraser, 1990: 389). According to Fraser, there are several expressions which function as connectives and are ambiguous, because they function as "different syntactic constituents on other occasions". For instance, now has two different functions in the following examples (Fraser, 1990: 390):

4) The window is broken. Now, we may get cold.
5) The window is broken. Now we are really getting cold.

For Fraser, now in example 4 functions as a "focusing device (DM)", while now in example 5 functions as a time adverbial, which is the real grammatical status of the expression now. However, dismissal of now in example 5 as a connective is not in accordance with his definition of connectives, in which connectives are said to signal semantic relations despite their grammatical functions. The time adverbial now in example 5 does signal a temporal relation between the segments S1 and S2, therefore it should be regarded as a temporal connective.

Brinton outlines the semantic properties of connectives in more detail and states that connectives "have no clear grammatical function because they occur either outside the syntactic structure or loosely attached to it" (1996: 33). However, despite the fact that discourse markers are not needed as constitutive elements of the syntactic structure, they have important functions of relating units of utterance and fitting them into a discourse context (Aijmer 2002). According to Brinton (1996), some items which have grammatical functions could be included in the category of connectives only if they can signal semantic relations as well, such as aspectual or modal particles, coordinate and subordinate conjunctions, phrases and sentence fragments. It seems that connectives cannot be properly addressed from the spectrum of grammatical functions alone, but rather their potential as signalling semantic relations is more relevant.

2.1.2.2 Semantic properties

According to the Relevance Theoretic Framework connectives do not contribute to the propositional content of the clauses of sentences in which they occur. That is, connectives have no relation to the basic meaning of the segments that contain them (Fraser, 1990 and Schiffrin, 2006). Moreover, Bloor and Bloor also suggest that connectives are not part of "the structure of the clause" (1995: 55), as they do not really belong to either of the clauses they join. This claim is also true for Kurdish connectives (Ali, 2004: 90). Because the connectives in both languages have semantic functions, signalling logical relationships between the clauses they connect, they are sometimes classified according to the meaning or logical-semantic relations they signal as well. The result of this process is referred to as "semantic bleaching" and Brinton describes connectives as "semantically empty" (1996: 36). Within the hierarchy of the functions of connectives which could include grammatical
functions, semantic meaning and pragmatic function, there is a progressive loss of semantic value of the connectives. In this regard, Stubbs states that semantics does not say much about the items that are included in the class of connectives "since when they are not used in their literal meanings, they have no property of thesis: that is, they have no propositional content" (1983: 68). Fraser is in line with Stubbs and points out that the occurrence of connectives "does not alter the potential relationship between the message which follows and the foregoing discourse" (1990: 390). The characteristics of connectives and the relations they signal are discussed in more detail in the section on Relevance Theory.

2.2 Connectives across languages

As the study of connectives gained popularity, the number of cross-linguistic studies on connectives also grew considerably. There are several comparative studies dealing with connectives across languages, for instance Yilmaz (2004) who conducts an in-depth pragmatic analysis and describes the function of three pragmatic particles yani, iсте and şey in casual, conversational Turkish. He describes the three connectives with reference to occurrences in utterances within three different domains of conversation; "Conversational / Discourse Orientation, Functional Orientation, Integrative Orientation" (2004: 23). The study concludes that the position of these connectives plays a vital role in the types of relations they signal. Gröte (2003) reviews the developing knowledge about connectives in descriptive and computational approaches to connective description and choice and in selecting connectives in the context of automatic text generation, concerning German temporal relations. Ramos (2010) compares L1 and L2 usage of connectives in EFL students' compositions. He contrasts frequencies and categories of relations in English and Spanish classroom compositions. Vickov (2007) uses a mixed-method study to investigate Croatian primary and secondary school students' use of English connectives in written mode. The results of her study show that Croatian EFL learners have a relatively limited command of English connectives. The results suggest the low acquisition of English connectives is because students tend to use a limited number of English connectives, which is caused by L1 interference and inadequate input. Similar studies in this area include Shen (2007) on English and Chinese and Hempel and Degand (2006) on English and French.
Connectives are also studied for their importance in reading comprehension on the grounds that they aid foreign language readers to perceive the correct meaning in a normal speed and with satisfactory understanding. Researchers like Sanders and Noordman (2000), Degand and Sanders (2000) and Chung (2000) have come to conclusion that connectives facilitate reading comprehension and that connectives have an impact on foreign students’ reading comprehension. The studies in this field collectively aim at the contribution to the study of connectives for the benefit of learning a foreign language and focus on the connectives used by EFL learners in different contexts such as reading, listening and speaking.

In addition, there are empirical studies which focus on how connectives are used by native and non-native speakers of English in their verbal communication. In this regard, Giora (1997) claims that connectives can be used to facilitate text comprehension by L2 learners and Zhang (2000) argues that boosting listening comprehension of EFL learners involves a great deal of attention to connectives. More specifically, Schegloff (1997) tackles the usage of certain connectives such as because and compares strategies for their usage in spoken English and ESL writing. Then, he claims that the mistakes made by ESL learners in using because in the correct place is because they are unaware of the communicative differences of connectives in spoken and written genres. Li (2004) states that Chinese EFL learners have problems in reading and listening comprehension, in terms of using correct connectives. Almost all studies on connectives in L2 learning and EFL skills suggest that connectives play an important role in teaching EFL students in general and text comprehension in particular.

As far as research on the use of discourse connectives in L1 and L2 newspapers is concerned, there are cross-linguistic studies involving English and Spanish, Persian and Arabic. Al Kohlani (2010) investigates the function of connectives in Arabic newspaper opinion articles. She adopts the Rhetorical Structure Theory to describe, in a top-down approach, how sentences and paragraphs are related to each other. She follows Halliday’s (2005) model of thematic structure analysis, which provides a tool to distinguish connectives which are not part of the propositional and grammatical core of their host sentences from other initial items that are semantically and structurally part of the sentence. In a contrastive cross-linguistic study, Dafouz-Milne (2008) explores the use of textual connectives by journalists in the opinion columns of two leading newspapers: the British broadsheet, The Times and the Spanish El País. Dafouz-Milne's contrastive study
shows that the Spanish writers use considerably more textual connectives than the English writers whereas the British-English group use more interpersonal connectives (connectives usually used in spoken modes) than the Spanish group. In a similar study, Abdollahzadeh (2007) observes the use of connectives in Persian and English newspaper editorials. His investigations reveal that Persian writers have limited awareness of the different connectives used in spoken and/or written texts while English writers tend to be more structured and seem to produce more coherent texts.

There is no previous study on Kurdish connectives and there is no reference to connectives in the body of Kurdish literature or any other terms that are commonly associated with connectives such as discourse markers, pragmatic markers, cue phrases or discourse connectives. Although Kurdish grammarians have not studied connectives in terms of their signalling potential in texts, there are references to conjunctions, called Amrazi Peiwendi, Amrazi Bestin or Amrazi lêkder (connective particles) as in Mukiryani (2000), Shwani (2002), Tofiq (2002) and Abdullah (2003). These studies treat conjunctions as linking devices and study the "connective particles" in a structural approach to the language. Traditional Kurdish linguists were interested in Şitelkari i.e. case and / or mood inflection, in their descriptions of the conjunctions. The communicative function conveyed by the conjunctions in discourse has been completely neglected or unobserved. The most remarkable Kurdish studies concerning conjunctive particles are by Tofiq (2002) who describes the structure of the relations within text, Ali (1992) who describes conjunction and ellipsis in Kurdish, Mukiryani (2000) analysing the grammatical relations between Kurdish sentences and Dzayee (2011) investigating the styles of persuasion and its relation to pragmatics and rhetoric. However, none of the existing Kurdish studies explain connectives in Kurdish. Rather, they refer to the connectives as conjunctive particles and describe them solely within a grammatical framework, without exploring the semantic and pragmatic aspects of the connectives in Kurdish. Nonetheless, existing Kurdish studies reveal the research deficit in terms of Kurdish connectives and provide a starting point to build upon the existing literature.
2.3 Cohesion and coherence

Halliday's work on cohesion and coherence has been an inspiration to other studies, for instance Bloor and Bloor (1995), de Beaugrande and Dressler (1987), Louwerse and Mitchell (2003) (to name but a few) in the field of text analysis.

Halliday (1994: 309) defines cohesion as

The relations that may involve elements of any extent, both smaller and larger than clauses, from single words to lengthy passages of TEXT; and they may hold across gaps of any extent, both within the clause and beyond it, without regard to the nature of whatever intervenes. This cannot be achieved by grammatical structure; it depends on a resource of a rather different kind. These non-structural resources for discourse are what are referred to by the term COHESION.

According to Halliday, there are two main types of cohesion: grammatical, referring to the structural content, and lexical, referring to the language content of the piece. Halliday and Hasan identify five general categories of cohesive devices that create coherence in texts: "reference, ellipsis, substitution, lexical cohesion, and conjunction" (1976: 2). According to them, cohesive (semantic) relations between and within sentences are the main determination of the creation of text, as they state: "We have to show how sentences, which are structurally independent of one another, may be linked together through particular features of their interpretation" (1976: 10). The link between textual segments is made via the use of connectives. Since the current thesis limits the analysis to only conjunctive relations in written text (specifically, argumentative text types), only connectives that signal the four sub-categories of conjunctive relations in English and Kurdish opinion articles are considered.

Cohesion has been defined from a number of perspectives through reference to speech acts, text analysis and conversational analysis. This diversity is partly due to the intractability of the concept itself, but also reflects the differences in the analysts’ opinions, the analytical objectives and the material subjected to the analysis, whether written or spoken in format. Nevertheless, the notion of cohesion is regarded as a crucial element in the analysis of texts and points to many of the connectives' characteristics such as multifunctionality and connectivity. This is clearly manifested in the necessity of interpreting "a sequence of
speech that is well formed but not yet fully understood” (Brown and Yule 1983: 194). Sometimes we need devices by which the missing information, which is necessary for understanding a text, can be recovered. The current study refers to those devices as *connectives* and suggests they vary considerably with typology. That is, each language system creates its own system of connectives which fits that language (Beaugrande and Dressler, 1981: 182). However, this does not mean that there is no room for universalities between and among languages. It is logical to assume that in any language in the world cohesion in a text refers to the continuity and the connectedness that exists between the different elements of that text. Without cohesion, a text will be fragmented and lose its textuality. Cohesion makes a text consistent, so that readers find relevance between and among segments throughout the text. For instance, consider examples 6 and 7.

6) Film studios have long wanted to reduce the four-month period of exclusivity enjoyed by cinemas. It is seen as a way to offset a decline in physical DVD sales, while also helping to combat internet piracy and initiate a radical change in film buffs’ viewing habits. **However**, not all of them are on board. Fithian confirmed that Paramount Pictures has privately expressed opposition to the shorter window...²

Understanding connectives as a type of cohesion can play a significant role in creating a cohesive text. In example 6, the English adversative connective *however* signals an adversative relation between the previous and the following segments S1 and S2. More specifically, it signals *denial of expectation*, i.e., S2 denies and rejects an assumption that is put forward in S1. Ellis supports this claim, seeing cohesion as bringing about a relation between sentences. He states that "cohesion is a tie or a relation between two elements such that one assumes the other and is at least partially dependent on it for interpretation” (1983: 223). According to Ellis’s definition one can safely conclude that the use of *however* helps the reader interpret the writer's message in the text, in which two segments are combined together in an adversative relation. More specifically, the relation is one of denial of expectation that is a sub-category of adversative relations. Connectives found in Kurdish texts exhibit similar characteristics in terms of cohesion and coherence, as in example 7.

---
7) Eger ancûmen azad bûaye deitwani le bûdcei emsał çwar ta pênc hezar genc dabmezrênêt, keçî ñêgêrê bo drûstkrawê. 

\( if\ \text{council} \text{governorate free was-}3\text{SP would-able-}3\text{SP inPREP budget-}\text{POSS thisDET-year four to five thousand youth employ-}3\text{SP on budgetPOSS developmentPOSS regions-theDEF-ART, butCONJ obstacle forPREP-}3\text{S-AGR made-has-beenPRF-}. \)

If the provincial council was independent, they could employ 4 to 5 thousand youths on the regional development budget. \textit{But} there were obstacles.

Kurdish texts, similar to English ones, could have cohesive characteristics such as the use of keçî (\textit{but}) as in example 7, which signals an adversative relation. The Kurdish connective keçî links S1 (an assumption) with S2 (contrary to expectations).

Other researchers build their definitions of cohesion and coherence on what Halliday has already put forward as the essence of these two expressions. That is, the two notions cohesion and coherence are associated with features of linkage between co-occurring sentences (de Beaugrande and Desseler, 1981). More profoundly, Eggins (1994:87) defines cohesion and coherence as follows:

Cohesion (internal organization) is the way we relate bits of discourse; semantic ties between different parts of the text which makes them dependent on each other for full interpretation. For instance, when the participants remain the same throughout the text, the content vocabulary is consistent. [...] Coherence is the relation to the context (both to the context of culture, i.e., genre, and to the context of situation, i.e., register.)

Cohesion is related to the broader concept of coherence. In the study of text, coherence is one of the most general and most widely discussed concepts. The notion of coherence has many different and often incompatible definitions. For text linguistics, coherence is a matter of semantics and domain knowledge, while various brands of speech act and dialogue analysis describe coherence in terms of intentions and interactional structures. In a spoken context, Schiffrin suggests that cohesion can be identified as a process of communication completed by interaction between the speaker and the hearer, such as

\(^{3}\text{Shekhani, 02/08/2011, http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=9904&z=4&f=1}\)
"question/answer pairs" therefore, coherence is dependent on "a speaker's successful integration of different verbal and nonverbal devices to situate a message in an interpretive frame and a hearer's corresponding synthetic ability to interpret such cues as a totality in order to interpret that message" (1987: 39). Van Dijk refers to coherence as a "semantic property of discourses, based on the interpretation of each individual sentence relative to the interpretation of other sentences" (1977: 94). According to Van Dijk, coherence is "based not only on the sequential relation between expressed and interpolated propositions, but also on the topic of discourse of a particular passage" (1977: 96). The analysis of the factors that make a text coherent or non-coherent suggests that total coherence requires cohesion not only on the grammatical surface but on the semantic level as well. Therefore, coherence is established when sentences or clauses in a paragraph relate to a single point, which is represented by a topic or a theme. Blakemore defines discourse as "the linguistic form of the utterance, contextual assumptions and the assumption that the speaker is being relevant" (2002: 44). According to her, there are two processes in understanding an utterance; first, the explicit process which involves the proposition expressed by the utterance and second, the implicit process that involves establishing extra proposition. In this regard, Relevance Theory can account for cases where a hearer's/reader's interpretation is not actually based on the proposition expressed, but rather on the non-linguistic features or contextual features. That is, connectives are not considered for their conceptual meanings but they are characterized by signalling certain semantic relations between two or more textual segments.

2.4 A Relevance-based approach to connectives

Relevance theory (RT) is a discursive theory developed by Sperber and Wilson (1995). The theory defines relevance in terms of cognitive effects and the effort processed by the reader. Cognitive effects are achieved when the new information interacts with a context of existing assumptions "by strengthening an existing assumption, by contradicting and eliminating an existing assumption or by combining with an existing assumption to yield a contextual implication" (Wilson and Sperber, 2004: 618). In RT's terms, the way communication takes place is that the receiver uses additional (new) knowledge, which is usually contextual assumptions, and combines it with existing (given) knowledge, which is existing assumptions, to interpret what is not explicit and derive cognitive effects. After that, the receiver puts the linguistic meaning of the sentence and the background
knowledge received from the context together in order to interpret the sender’s communicative intention. Wilson and Sperber state that "this process is time and effort consuming, but if the item of information is relevant, it has a reward" (2002b: 251). The reward is a well-presented, cohesive and coherent text.

Blakemore (1987, 1992, and 2002) and Wilson and Sperber (1993) approach connectives within the Relevance-Theoretic framework. In particular, Blakemore (1987) reanalyzes Grice’s discourse connectives distinguishing between conceptual and procedural encoding. Blakemore defines connectives in light of the RT framework as "expressions that constrain the interpretation of the utterances that contain them by virtue of the inferential connections that they express" (1987: 105). She proposes that connectives do not have a conceptual meaning, but have only a procedural meaning, which consists of instructions about how to manipulate the conceptual representation of the utterance. That is, connectives have lost their semantic values because they function on the communicative level of the discourse and therefore they signal semantic relations between two text segments rather than meaning something as a discrete item in isolation. This is particularly important when dealing with the individual connectives, because connectives, if considered only for their conceptual meanings, could be confusing for translators. That is, they could be mistranslated, because they may have different procedural meanings in different contexts. So, by using the procedures of RT, the analyst can clarify the complexity of connectives by describing the various contextual meanings that are generated, rather than assuming that there is a single, conceptual meaning of each connective in an abstract, decontextualized sense. Connectives help to provide utterance of optimal relevance, by guiding the search for intended contexts and cognitive effects, which reduces processing efforts. Consequently, the intended interpretation can be achieved much more efficiently.

Relevance Theory deals with connectives based on the concept of procedure, where according to Moeschler (1989: 322)

> The meaning of a connective is not drawn by a single semantic value whose discourse consists of particular realisations, but by a more complex pathway through a tree diagram whose roots represent the connective’s basic semantics. Each of the tree’s nodes represents a condition, an access to a value or a particular form of usage.
Applying this principle, it seems rather easier to answer a question like: "How is but used?" than a question such as, "What does but mean?" In the Relevance Theoretic framework, connectives encode procedural information, i.e., information to constrain or guide the inferential process of comprehension by restricting the number of hypotheses the reader needs to consider in order to arrive at an optimally relevant interpretation, and thus to facilitate her or his understanding of a text. Connectives can achieve this purpose because they are seen as displaying or making explicit logical relations between successive discourse segments. However, multifunctionality of connectives can still pose challenges cross-linguistically. For instance, a connective in English may be polysemous and signal different semantic relations in different contexts, whereas its equivalent in Kurdish may not be polysemous and signal only one specific relation. As Chapter Five discusses in more detail, but signals four sub-relations of adversative relations in English; denial, correction, cancellation and contrastive, which are signalled by keçî, belkû, belam and be pêçewanewe in Kurdish. However, keçî, belkû and be pêçewanewe can only signal their respective relations and not any other relation. The paradigm of correspondence indicates that translation can be used as an analytical tool in studying connectives cross-linguistically.

2.5 The use of translation as a tool to study connectives

This section examines the difficulties that are likely to be encountered in translating connectives from English into Kurdish and vice versa and considers whether translation can be used as a tool for cross-linguistic studies focusing on connectives. Several researchers who conducted cross-linguistic studies between English and other languages used translation as a tool for analysis, for example Aijmer et al (2006) and Chesterman (1997). These two studies conclude that by way of establishing paradigms of correspondences for connectives within and among languages, a better description of the functions and characteristics of connectives can be reached. The current study follows Aijmer and et al's approach to the use of translation in linguistic studies, as they state that "translations of pragmatic markers can serve as a heuristic for discovering contextual dimensions or for making more fine-grained divisions in these dimensions, because the translations force one to account for the contextual factors that lead to particular choices." (2006: 111). In this regard, the study examines the translation of each connective from English into Kurdish and vice versa. Then paradigms of correspondences are established.
between and among the connectives from both languages. This process of two-way translation creates a network of connectives under each subtype of conjunctive relations.

There are other aspects of translation that can reveal a great deal about the nature and functions of connectives between two languages, such as explicitation. "Explicitation" is the act where a translator makes a "source language (SL)" explicit in the "target language (TL)" via addition of certain elements that could make the TL more explicit and help make better cohesion and coherence of the text (Baleghizadeh and Sharifi, 2010: 57). Changing the position of a connective or using an unsuitable connective in translation can trigger a change in the text organisation, and sometimes could produce mistranslation. In this regard, Chesterman considers cohesion change as one of the syntactic strategies which "affects intra-textual reference, ellipsis, substitution, pro-nominalisation and repetition, or the use of connectors of various kinds" (1997: 98).

So far, no study has compared the use of connectives in opinion articles written by English and Kurdish journalists, to my knowledge. The current thesis attempts to analyse the connectives that signal the four categories of conjunctive relations outlined in Halliday and Hasan (1976) and then provides equivalents from Kurdish. This thesis is a pioneering research to look at connectives in comparison between English and Kurdish and to attempt a modification of Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification of conjunctive relations in order to establish a classification of Kurdish connectives with implications for translation.

2.6 Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification of conjunctive relations

Conjunction involves the use of markers to relate sentences, clauses and / or paragraphs to each other. It signals the way the writer wants the reader to relate what is about to be said to what has been said before or what has been said to what will come next. This kind of cohesive relation is different in nature from the other cohesive relations; reference, substitution, ellipsis and lexical cohesion, as Halliday and Hasan (1976: 226) state that:

Conjunctive elements are cohesive not in themselves but indirectly, by virtue of their specific meanings; they are not primary devices for reaching out into the preceding (or following) text, but they express certain meanings which presuppose the presence of other components in the discourse.
According to Halliday, conjunction acts as a semantic cohesive tie within text and signals four relations in the text: "additive, adversative, causal and temporal" (2002: 174). Table 2 represents all the conjunctives relations and the connectives that signal them, as presented in Halliday and Hasan’s (1976) classification.

**Table 2 Conjunctive relations in Halliday and Hasan (1976: 242-243)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>relation</th>
<th>External/ Internal</th>
<th>Internal (Unless otherwise specified)</th>
<th>Additive, Simple:</th>
<th>Additive: and, and also</th>
<th>Negative: nor, and… not</th>
<th>Alternative: or, or else</th>
<th>Adversative ‘proper’:</th>
<th>Simple: yet, though, only</th>
<th>Containing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Complex Emphatic:</td>
<td>Apposition:</td>
<td>Comparison:</td>
<td>Expository: that is, I mean, in other words</td>
<td>Exemplificatory: for instance, thus</td>
<td>Dissimilar: on the other hand, by contrast</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Simple:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adversative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘proper’:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple: yet,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>though, only</td>
<td>Avowal: in fact,</td>
<td>Of meaning:</td>
<td>Dismissal:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actually, as a matter of fact</td>
<td>instead, rather, on the contrary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Of wording: at</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Open-ended:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"additive, adversative, causal and temporal" (2002: 174)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causal</th>
<th>Simple:</th>
<th>Emphatic:</th>
<th>Reversal Causal:</th>
<th>Conditional (also external):</th>
<th>Respective:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Causal, general:</td>
<td>Simple: so,</td>
<td>Simple: but, and,</td>
<td>Simple: for,</td>
<td>Simple: then</td>
<td>Direct:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>then, hence,</td>
<td>Emphatic: however,</td>
<td>because</td>
<td></td>
<td>in this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>therefore</td>
<td>Emphatic: however,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>respect, in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>on the other hand,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>this regard,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>at the same time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reference to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Causal, specific:</td>
<td>Emphatic:</td>
<td>Emphatic:</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reversed polarity:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>consequently,</td>
<td>in that</td>
<td></td>
<td>otherwise, in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>because of this</td>
<td>case, in such an</td>
<td></td>
<td>other aspects,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>event, that being so</td>
<td></td>
<td>aside from this</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Causal, specific:</td>
<td>Reason: it</td>
<td>Emphatic:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>follows, on</td>
<td>in that</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>this basis</td>
<td>case, in such an</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>event, that being so</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Causal, specific:</td>
<td>Generalized:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>under the</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>circumstances,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Causal, specific:</td>
<td>Reason: for this</td>
<td>Result: arising</td>
<td>Reversed polarity:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reason, on</td>
<td>out of this</td>
<td>otherwise, in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>account of this</td>
<td></td>
<td>other circumstances</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Causal, specific:</td>
<td>Reason: for this</td>
<td>Result: arising</td>
<td>Reversed polarity:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reason, on</td>
<td>out of this</td>
<td>otherwise, in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>account of this</td>
<td></td>
<td>other circumstances</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Causal, specific:</td>
<td>Result: as a</td>
<td>Purpose: to this</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>result, in</td>
<td>end</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporal</td>
<td>Consequence</td>
<td>Purpose: for this purpose, with this in mind</td>
<td>Temporal, Simple (external only): Complex (external only): Internal Temporal: ‘Here and now’:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequential:</td>
<td>Immediate: at once, thereupon</td>
<td>Sequential: then, next, secondly</td>
<td>Past: up to now, hitherto</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just then, at the same time</td>
<td>Interrupted: soon, after a time,</td>
<td>Conclusive: finally, in conclusion</td>
<td>Present: at this point, here</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preceding:</td>
<td>Repetitive: next time, on another occasion</td>
<td>Correlative Forms:</td>
<td>Future: from now on, hence forward</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>previously, before that</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conclusive:</td>
<td>Specific: next day, an hour later</td>
<td>Sequential: first…then</td>
<td>Summary:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple:</td>
<td>Durative: meanwhile</td>
<td>Conclusive: ...finally</td>
<td>Summarizing: to sum up, in short, briefly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finally, at last</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correlative forms:</td>
<td>Terminal: until then</td>
<td></td>
<td>Resumptive: to resume, to return to the point</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequential:</td>
<td>Punctiliar: at this</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Conjunctions may not be the primary tools in making a text cohesive, but they are certainly effective devices that create links between textual segments. They are very well studied and classified in English by Halliday and Hasan (1976) as shown in Table 2. All these studies provide remarkable description of conjunctions and their functions within the boundary of sentence or local level in the text.

There are many classifications of conjunctions in Kurdish based on their definitions and features, for instance Mukryani (1986), Ali (1992), Tofiq (2002), and the Kurdish Academy (2011). However, the Kurdish studies have not succeeded to provide a single unified classification of the conjunctions and they do not distinguish the conjunctions from connectives. Ali states that "it is not an easy task to classify conjunctions in Kurdish, because of their multi-functionality" (1992: 13). Nonetheless, the current study utilizes translation to verify the signalling potentials of each connective. For instance, (*ke, that*) signals three different relations between two textual segments in the text, as in examples 4, 5 and 6 (Ali, 1992: 14).

4) **Ke** hatum to ṭoiştbûî. (Temporal relation)

   *When comePST you 2SP go-PST-PRF-AGR2*

   *When* I came you had left.

5) **Ke** to bêt min lewê namênîm. (Conditional relation)

   *If you comePFV-AGR2 1-ISP there not-stay-COND-AGR1*

   *If* you come, I will leave.

6) **Ke** nexwênêt dernaçêt. (Causal Relation)

   Because he not-study-AGR3, he pass-not-FUT-AGR3

   *Because* he does not study, he does not succeed.
The connective *ke* in examples 4, 5 and 6 is considered ambiguous, if only the Kurdish texts are presented. However, the translation data in examples 4, 5 and 6 show that *ke* is not ambiguous, as *ke* signals different relations in each different context. The current studies in Kurdish have explained various features of conjunctions in terms of their grammatical features. Although they differ in their classifications and the labelling of these elements, they all agree on the fact that these are "tools used to link constituents of a text" in discourse (Farhadi, 2003: 125).

### 2.7 Reformulation of Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification of conjunctive relations

The macro classification of conjunctive relations in Halliday and Hasan (1976) is adopted in the current study without any changes, in which relations are divided into four main categories such as: "additive, adversative, causal, and temporal" (1976: 238). However, there are issues in the categorisation of the subtypes of these four relations and there are no clear criteria to associate each connective with a sub-category of conjunctive relations in the micro level, i.e., regarding the connectives. The issues and the solutions in each sub-category are further explained in chapters 4, 5, 6 and 7 in this thesis. Nonetheless, this section briefly presents a modified classification of the original one.

Halliday and Hasan (1976) do not engage with the ambiguity of connectives claimed by other researchers. Anscombre and Ducrot (1977) and Horn (1989) claim that connectives can be ambiguous, such as the case of *ke* in Kurdish presented earlier. However, this thesis does not agree with the ambiguity account of connectives, and instead claims that connectives cannot be ambiguous, but rather they could be polysemous. The term polysemous refers to those elements, be it a connective, a noun or any other parts of speech, that have different meanings and whose different meanings are related in one way or another. Now, in terms of connectives, polysemy does not stand for different meanings of connectives, because connectives do not have semantic values, but rather it stands for the different interpretations they signal in texts. For example, Kurdish *ke* has no semantic value, but it is found to signal conjunctive relations, as mentioned earlier. According to Relevance Theory, polysemous connectives have different procedures to follow based on contexts in which they are found.
2.7.1 Additive

On the macro level, the Hallidayan framework of the additive relations was not modified in the current study, because the definitions of the subcategories of the additive relations in Halliday and Hasan (1976) were unproblematic. However, on the micro level, modifications were necessary, because the analytic approach in the Hallidayan framework was not sufficient to account for characteristics of the additive connectives in the current study. The study outlines the additive connectives from both languages in light of Relevance Theory's procedural account.

Halliday and Hasan (1976) distinguished the additive connectives according to their grammatical functions only, which could not show the semantic and pragmatic characteristics of the connectives. However, the current study outlines the connectives according to four general procedural accounts corresponding to the four sub-categories of the additive relations, such as simple, complex, appositional and comparative. The simple additive connectives implement a procedure in which S1 is supplied by additional information in S2 without emphasis on any of the segments. The complex additive connectives implement the procedure that S1 is supplied by additional information in S2, with emphasis on S2. The connectives which signal the appositional additive relation would implement a procedure in which S1 is exemplified by S2, and the exposition would be one of exemplification, explanation, definition or clarification. The comparative additive relation is signalled by connectives that implement a procedure in which S1 is compared (similar / dissimilar) to S2.

According to Halliday and Hasan additive connectives are mainly derived from "the class of conjunctions" (1976: 254). However, this definition is limited to the conjunctions that could either signal a grammatical relation in a single sentence or a semantic relation between two textual segments, such as the connectives and and w. This research will include the additive connectives that signal additive relations in English and Kurdish texts only, and distinguishes the conjunctions that only signal a grammatical relation from the connectives that signal semantic relations. The rationale for this distinction is to produce a unified list of English additive connectives in order to lay out classification of Kurdish additive connectives.
2.7.2 Adversative

The adversative relations and connectives in English have been widely studied by researchers such as Halliday and Hasan (1976), Halliday (2004), Biber et al (2002), Leech et al (2001) and Fraser (1995). Each of these studies defines and groups adversative connectives according to a specific approach the study adopts, whether grammatical, semantic or communicative. For instance, Biber et al discuss how the adversative relation can be paralleled with "concessive relation" and that adversative connectives signal "the unexpected, surprising nature of what is being said in view of what was said before" (2002: 878). In comparison, Leech et al generalize the term and define the adversative connective as a certain form or construction which is used in semantics to indicate antithetical circumstances" (2001: 269). Rudolph points out that one of the differences between adversative and causal relations is the consideration of “the broken causal chains” in which the types of relations are “conceptualised as occurring in a temporal sequence, the cause being the first one, followed by the effect” (1996: 30). However, in the case of adversative relations “simultaneity is given” (Ibid: 30). According to Schiffrin, the adversative relations “preface an upcoming proposition whose content contrasts with that of the prior proposition” (1988: 187). Fraser is concerned with the functions of but and whether it has an equivalent in other languages. He hypothesizes that every language has "a single, primary Contrastive Discourse Marker in" such as "but in English aber in German, mais in French, and pero in Spanish" and that the uses of these "primary CDMs are the same across languages" (Fraser, 2005: 37). I have outlined Fraser's hypotheses in chapter five. It seems that Fraser’s first hypothesis is true, as both English and Kurdish have a primary adversative connective (but and belam). However, the second hypothesis does not apply to the case of the Kurdish primary contrastive connective belam, because it is not as multifunctional and multi-categorical as English but. For instance, but exhibits a significant range of different adversative relations such as denial of expectation, contrastive, correction and cancellation.

These subtypes are all explained in detail in chapter five. The basic view behind these different sub-relations is that according to RT every connective constrains the textual segments it combines based on its position and surrounding context in the text. That is, the procedural meanings of the connectives are considered, because they do not have semantic values. As mentioned earlier, it is very difficult to answer a question such as: What is the
meaning of but? Whereas it is much easier to answer a question like: How is but used? That is why the procedural account of each connective is considered in the current study in light of RT in order to show the different interpretations each adversative connective allows in English and Kurdish texts.

The most profound classification of adversative relations and connectives is presented by Halliday and Hasan (1976). However, the classification seems rather vague in the micro level, as the distinction between "adversative proper" and the other subtypes of adversative relation is not clarified. In addition, the difference between "simple adversative" and "simple contrastive" is not known and they include the connective "but" in both "adversative proper" and "contrastive" without referring to reasons and the specific criteria for the use of but (1976: 250).

In this thesis, the functions and signalling potentials of each of the adversative connectives is illustrated and tested through translation. Through the use of translation, paradigms of correspondence are created between and among the English and Kurdish adversative connectives. The next section applies similar processes in modifying the causal relations and creates another paradigm of correspondences between English and Kurdish causal-conditional connectives.

2.7.3 Causal-conditional

The third type of the conjunctive relations in the Hallidayan framework is the causal-conditional relations. Causality is a complex phenomenon, which has been researched extensively in many fields, including philosophy, science and sociology. Here the focus remains on a textual perspective which builds on one of the key characteristics of causality, namely its relationship to iconicity. Here the framework used to explore this further is Sanders et al’s (1992: 2) cognitive parameter of "Order of Segments". Additional to the criterion of iconicity, the current study also focuses on the position of the connectives within the segments; whether initial position of S1 or S2 and the semantico-pragmatic status of the segments whether they are S1 causal and S2 effect; S1 condition and S2 result.

The current thesis modifies the Hallidayan framework of the causal-conditional relations on the macro level and the connectives on the micro level. On the macro level of coherence relations, Sanders et al classify the relations in terms of the basic order of the textual segments S1 and S2, in which the order of the segments could either be "iconic or non-
On the micro level, the connectives are also distributed according to the specific relations they signal. In terms of Relevance Theory principles, the connectives constrain the order of the segments based on their positions in the text; whether initial position of S1 or S2. Based on these criteria, the modified classification of the causal-conditional relations would include the following:

1. **Iconic causal relation** (S1 cause- S2 effect)
2. **Non-iconic causal relation** (S1 effect- S2 cause)
3. **Iconic conditional** (S1 condition- S2 result)
4. **Non-iconic conditional** (S1 result- S2 condition)

This modification of Halliday and Hasan’s (1976) classification is undertaken because of the issues with the Hallidayan framework of causal relations. The issues found in the Hallidayan framework are outlined in detail in Chapter Six.

### 2.7.4 Temporal

There is no universal definition of time that is applicable to various fields such as science, philosophy and religion. Each of these fields defines time differently and relates it to different elements in the world. However, researchers from all of these fields agree on one fact: that there is one-way direction of "the arrow of time pointing from past to future" (Maršić, 2011: 19). Therefore, they agree on a linear model of time, in which time provides a baseline reference in which events can be placed in order of occurrence. According to Halliday and Hasan, the relation between "the propositions of two successive sentences may be simply one of sequence in time; the one is subsequent to the other" (1976: 260).

The temporal sequence is the key in relating to temporal connectives, although there is a range of other elements of the text that could signal time reference. The current thesis agrees with Halliday and Hasan's distinction between time adverbials that signal a single time reference in a sentence and the time adverbials that signal a temporal relation between two different time scenes divided into two separate textual segments. Nonetheless, the time scenes that are embedded in the textual segments are not always iconic regarding the linear organisation. For example, the temporal connective *after* signals a sequential temporal relation and it conveys the notion of *subsequence*, but the textual sequence is not iconic such as S1 previous S2 subsequent. The presence of *after* triggers the textual sequence to be S1 subsequent S2 previous.
Halliday and Hasan's classification of temporal relations does not address the importance of the immediate relation between temporal sequences and textual sequences. Therefore, there is no clear distinction between and among the temporal connectives and the temporal relations. Chapter seven of the current thesis applies the procedural account to show the characteristics of the temporal connectives via the temporal sequences along with the relevant textual sequences of the connected segments in order to modify the original classification. This way, temporal relations and the connectives are divided among three separate subcategories as sequential, terminal and simultaneous.

2.8 Genre

2.8.1 Journalistic language

The investigation of connectives in journalistic texts has not received much attention in the area of research on discourse analysis. However, newspaper discourse is indisputably one of the most common public media which has a wide range of readers. In this regard, Fowler points out that "readers gain a large proportion of their knowledge of the world through the media, mainly newspapers" (1991: 3). Although not numerous, there are existing cross-linguistic studies of connectives in this specialised genre: Dafouz-Milne (2008) gives a contrastive analysis of writers' usage of connectives in English and Spanish newspaper editorials, Lee (2004) examines connectives used in Chinese newspaper headlines, Al Kohlani (2010) analyses connectives in Arabic newspaper opinion articles. All these studies suggest that journalistic language, especially opinion articles yield a remarkable number of connectives. The high number of connectives in journalistic texts shows that journalists depend heavily on the use of connectives to convey their messages and to direct their readers to specific ideas.

There is no previous study on connectives in Kurdish newspaper opinion articles. The written form of Sorani Dialect (SD) covers a wide range of discourse styles and genres ranging from complex and conservative to innovative and experimental. The Sorani dialect is the formal language of Kurdistan Regional Government in Iraq and it is the medium of instruction in most areas in the region. Sorani dialect is commonly used in Kurdish mass media; therefore it makes a good starting point for research on connectives. Reah points out that the journalism text has a language of its own which is "characterized by distinctive
functional, lexical and structural features" (2002: 95). In this respect, the Kurdish language used in newspapers is mainly SD and mass media forms a very large body of the Kurdish written form in the region.

The form used in Kurdish journalism is the national and international medium of communication for millions of Kurds across and outside Kurdistan region, Iraq. It provides political, social, and cultural information that touches people’s lives, expresses different views and ideas, reflects on different events and topics, and generates comments and debates among people. Kennedy notes that "next to the novel, the newspaper article is probably the single most widely read written genre" (1998: 49). Kurdish newspapers reach a wide and diverse audience of educated and less educated people, because of its central role as a major medium of communication in the Kurdish society. Of course, newspaper articles are of many different types and subgenres, so in order to narrow down the range of data in the current thesis, the researcher has selected opinion articles.

2.8.2 Opinion articles

Newspapers contain different genres like news stories, interviews, advertising, short stories, sports news, opinion articles and editorials. The data examined in this study consist of online newspaper opinion articles. In order to provide a complete characterization of the data, we need to know the nature and organization of the samples. Halliday states: "In order to give a complete characterization of texture we should have to make reference also to ‘generic’ structure, the form that a text has as a property of its genre" (2002: 44). Each of these different genres of prose has its distinct characteristics. The newspaper opinion article is one genre of journalistic prose that has an argumentative style. That is, writers tend to persuade the readers and lead them to a certain point in their message. Consequently, the writers use different connectives to signal textual relations between sentences to help the reader perceive relevance between and among the ideas expressed in the articles. These articles "display the features of journalistic language" mentioned above and demonstrate their own specific features that are realized in their linguistic choices, styles and structures (Reah, 2002: 99).

Opinion articles are texts of different length that usually appear in a fixed place in the newspaper. They are written by various well-known professional writers who either hold a position at the newspaper or write for several newspapers on a regular basis. Within the
community with which they share the same social and cultural background, these writers express their views or opinions on current events or issues relevant to their local community and the world. However, Van Dijk (1998: 29) points out, while these articles reflect their writers’ views, they are also influenced by the ideologies and political orientations of the newspaper in which they appear. Therefore, opinion articles have an argumentative nature and writers may need to use a considerable number of connectives throughout their argumentative style to direct or to persuade the reader. Consequently, the translation of a piece of text from opinion articles could be more challenging than texts from other genres such as narrative, news articles or scientific articles.

2.9 Conclusion

This thesis contributes to the body of literature on connectives, as it focuses on the use of connectives in English and Kurdish newspaper opinion articles. The originality of the current study lies in the comparison between English and Kurdish, involving the pioneering attempt to establish a classification of Kurdish conjunctive relations and connectives based on Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification.

Also, this thesis uses translation tools such as paradigm of correspondences to build networks of equivalences between and among English and Kurdish connectives based on translation data from English and Kurdish opinion articles. This chapter summarised Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification of conjunctives not as relations made on the macro level (additive, adversative, causal and temporal), but on a micro level in terms of the sub-types of the relations and the distribution of the connectives into each category of conjunctive relations. The purpose behind the modification of the original classification is to produce a clearer classification of English connectives and therefore establish a more robust categorisation of Kurdish connectives with implications for translation. Translation has been used to test and illustrate the category and signalling potentials of each connective in Kurdish.

The term "connective" is adopted to refer to the cohesive devices to be studied in the current thesis, because it is the most suitable term to refer to the linguistic elements that signal relations in a text among other terms such as Discourse Markers, Discourse Particles, Directives, Metadiscourse Markers, and cue phrases. Researchers not only
disagree on the term referring to these elements but they also disagree on what they link and how they link them. Nonetheless, the term ‘*connective*’ seems to be preferred when referring to cohesive devices functioning in written modes.
CHAPTER THREE: DATA AND METHODOLOGY

3.0 Introduction

This study analyses and compares the functions of connectives in English and Kurdish newspaper opinion articles, based on Halliday and Hasan's (1976) approach to text organization and the definition of connectives by Fraser (1999) within the framework of Relevance Theory, which is developed by Wilson and Sperber (1995). The methodology applied in the current study is a mixture of qualitative and quantitative methods both in terms of data collection and analysis. The following sections outline the methodology as relevant to two main categories: first, the methods of gathering data (including the selection criteria for the newspapers, opinion articles, connectives and translators). Second, the methods of analysis are outlined (including text segmentation, coding, textual analysis, translation as a practice and the application of Relevance Theory to the current data and Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification of conjunctive relations).

3.1 Comparative study

The current thesis is a comparative study that examines the grammatical, semantic and pragmatic aspects of English and Kurdish connectives. The objective of comparative studies may vary as the comparison of languages is of considerable interest from a theoretical as well as an applied perspective because a comparative study reveals what is general and what is language specific. Therefore, it is important for "the understanding of language in general and for the study of the individual languages compared" (Johansson and Hofland, 1989: 26). Since cultures vary from place to place, grammatical structures, semantic values and pragmatic functions of each language would inevitably reflect this variation. Consequently, while there may be generalised points of comparability, culture-bound materials like connectives can also be found to differ from language to language and these differences could cause problems in translation. The methodology of comparative analysis is adopted in the current thesis to identify similarities and differences in the functions of connectives in both languages. However, comparing a universally known and well-researched language like English with Kurdish (Sorani), which has had nowhere near the amount of scholarly attention as English, is very difficult to balance in terms of
selection and equivalence of the data samples. To overcome this issue, this research adopts a more qualitative and a less quantitative approach to the analysis of the data. Therefore, the current study should be regarded as a starting point, inevitably constrained by the nature of the materials which have been analysed. One such constraint is that there are no large-scale corpus resources in Kurdish language whereas there are many well established corpora in English such as BNC (British National Corpus). Therefore, small-scale datasets need to be selected to provide the material for analysis here. The following sections outline the methods of data selection and analysis regarding both languages.

3.2 Methods of gathering data

The methods of gathering data in the current study underwent four main stages. In each stage there were selection criteria which guided the choices to include particular examples of a particular text type (newspapers), genre (opinion articles), linguistic feature (connectives) and participants (translators who have been commissioned to translate all the connectives under investigation in the current study from English into Kurdish and vice versa).

3.2.1 Selection criteria for the newspapers

The data accumulated for analysis of the connectives in the present study consist of 40 opinion articles from three English and three Kurdish online newspapers. The English and Kurdish newspapers included in the current study reflect the same level of formality between British English and Kurdish (Sorani Dialect). They all cover a diverse range of topics including opinion articles. The English newspapers are all issued in the United Kingdom and comprise of The Guardian, The Independent and The Daily Telegraph. These three newspapers are selected because of their high circulation (see table 3), international distribution and comprehensive coverage of various issues. They are all regarded as broadsheets. The reason why broadsheets are included and tabloids are excluded for data collection in the current study is because of the greater frequency of opinion articles in broadsheets rather than Tabloids, greater length of articles in broadsheets and consistency of style. Moreover, tabloids contain all kinds of contents including news articles, cartoons pictures and gossip, whereas broadsheet newspapers use "a more formal language" and they are more "objective than tabloids" (Keeble, 2005: 39).
The three English newspapers surveyed have differing political orientations, where *The Daily Telegraph* tends toward a conservative and nationalist worldview, whereas *The Guardian* and *The Independent* represent more leftist/liberal opinions.

**Table 3** Circulation figures of the English newspapers as shown in the national dailies’ website

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Newspapers</th>
<th>July 2011</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Daily Telegraph</td>
<td>634,113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Guardian</td>
<td>248,775</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Independent</td>
<td>182,881</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The selection of the three Kurdish newspapers was also dependent on their high circulation and wide distribution in the Iraqi Kurdistan Region. The three Kurdish newspapers are formal broadsheet newspapers that use the formal Sorani dialect of Kurdish. Similar to the English newspapers, the Kurdish newspapers represent different political views in the region. For instance, *Khebat* has a banner on the website which says "Kurdish Political Daily Newspaper - organ of Kurdistan Democratic Party". *Xendan* does not overtly state that they are affiliated to PUK (Patriot Union of Kurdistan), but the contents of the newspaper suggest it is indeed affiliated to PUK. As for *Sbeiy*, its contents show that it is affiliated to Gorran, the main opposition party in the Iraqi Kurdistan Region. The three Kurdish newspapers forming the Kurdish data in this study are intentionally selected from the three main political parties in order to avoid bias towards a particular rhetorical style according to journalists' style or political background.

### 3.2.2 Selection criteria for the opinion articles

The newspaper opinion article is one genre of journalistic prose that has an argumentative style. Opinion article writers tend to persuade their readers of particular stances "in order to lead them towards a certain conclusion" (Walton, 1998: 73). As a result, the writers use

---


6 [http://www.xebat.net](http://www.xebat.net)
different connectives to signal textual relations between sentences to help the reader perceive relevance between and among the ideas expressed in the articles. The reason why opinion articles are chosen for the textual analysis is that they yield a more diverse range of connectives than other written genres such as narrative and expository discourse. In the process of testing material for analysis, a pilot study was conducted to investigate the frequencies and the diversity of connectives in sample opinion articles and short stories (see table 4). The results showed that both in English and Kurdish argumentative text types the rate of using connectives is higher than the one of narrative text types.

Table 4 Frequencies of English and Kurdish connectives in argumentative and narrative text types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Languages</th>
<th>Total number of tokens (words) from 40 opinion articles</th>
<th>Total number of connectives signalling the four categories of conjunctive relations</th>
<th>Total number of tokens (words) from 5 short stories</th>
<th>Total number of connectives signalling the four categories of conjunctive relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>36,834</td>
<td>1,033</td>
<td>25,652</td>
<td>580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kurdish</td>
<td>35,703</td>
<td>978</td>
<td>23,156</td>
<td>478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.06</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In total 40 English and 40 Kurdish opinion articles were chosen to form the body of the data in the current study. These were identified because they were explicitly labelled as opinion pieces by the newspapers. In Kurdish, opinion articles are referred to as wtar (speech) and/or birwra (opinion). Forty opinion articles yielded a considerable number of connectives. The material in English included 1,033 examples of connectives and the Kurdish material contained 978 connectives, which comprise 2.7% of the total number of words in the English data and 2.6% of the total number of words in the Kurdish data, as shown in Table 4. After collecting an initial sample of 30 opinion articles, a further 10 were collected in order to test whether any new connectives might be identified. As no new connectives were found in the additional opinion articles, it appeared that the data collection had reached a point of saturation in the data coding which meant that there was no need to collect more examples. I used Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification as a
checklist to ensure that I had examples of all the written connectives available occurring at least once, showing their full range of potential positions and meanings. The persuasive style of the articles was the major criterion for selection, because the authors would use a wide range of connectives in building up their arguments.

Among the 40 English opinion articles, 36 were about political issues and debates and 4 were about economic and cultural topics. Among Kurdish opinion articles, 38 were on political topics and two were about socio-economic topics. The nature of the topics was not a significant selection criterion in the current study, because the articles are all argumentative text types and they all intend to persuade the reader about a certain point. In order to reflect various views on the current topics, this study has selected opinion articles from newspapers that have different ideologies and political affiliations. In this regard, Van Dijk (1998: 29) writes that opinion articles not only reflect their writers’ views, but they are also influenced by the ideologies and political orientations of the newspaper in which they appear. They also use connectives frequently to influence the readers’ perception of the message in the article and to make the message as clear as possible, whereas in the other text types such as narrative or expository there is less interest in using connectives and usually the message is left to be discovered by the readers themselves. Consequently, the translation of a piece of text from opinion articles from English into Kurdish could be more “challenging than texts from other genres such as narrative, news articles or scientific articles”, because there is no well-defined list of Kurdish connectives (Haque, 2012: 101).

As far as the copyright of the opinion articles is concerned, permission from the individual article writers to analyse the material was not sought, because the opinion articles are in the public domain. However, written consent was obtained from the selected English and Kurdish newspapers in order to be able to use the contents of the opinion articles as data in the current study.

3.2.3 Selection criteria for the connectives

The analyses of connectives required attention to their actual use in discourse. After selecting the opinion articles, all occurrences of the connectives that signalled conjunctive relations were identified. The selection criteria for the connectives were employed according to four main characteristics salient to the four sub-categories of conjunctive relations such as semantic content, polysemy, textual positioning and time scenes. For
instance, only the connectives that signalled a conjunctive relation above the clausal level between two or more textual segments were included and not the items that coordinate between two constituents of a single sentence which form a single segment. Second, they all are mainly used in written text genres and the cohesive devices that are mainly used in the spoken mode only were excluded such as *y’know, oh!* and *ok*. The third criterion was that the English connectives should be drawn from Halliday and Hasan’s classification of conjunctives. There were other taxonomies for English connectives like Mann and Thompson (1987), based on the Rhetorical Structure Theory; Fraser (1999), a coherence-based classification of connectives. However, these other taxonomies were not as detailed as the Hallidayan framework.

As for Kurdish connectives, because there is no previous classification of Kurdish connectives, I first needed to identify which linguistic items might count as connectives. In order to do this, I first provided my own translations of the English language opinion articles in Kurdish, and the Kurdish language opinion articles in English. However, given that a single translation might raise questions of subjectivity, all the examples of connectives identified from the initial translation were also presented to the 32 Kurdish translators from which they translated the English connectives into Kurdish and the Kurdish ones into English. This is referred to as building "paradigms of correspondences" (Aijmer et al, 2006: 111). The paradigm of correspondences of each connective reveals the equivalences that are associated with certain connectives in another language. Thus, the connectives from both languages needed to be analysed in their immediate contexts as well. However, the translation options for the connectives received from the translators were diverse and in certain cases there were two or more different options for a single connective. To solve this issue, the study selected the most frequently given translation option to arrive at a suitable equivalent for each connective in both languages. The lists of connectives from both languages are provided according to the sub-category of conjunctive relations that they signal, (the *additive, adversative, causal-conditional* and *temporal* relations) and they are presented in chapters 4, 5, 6 and 7 respectively.

In order to be able to outline all connectives that signal conjunctive relations, in the opinion articles from both languages, all the discourse sequences in which the connectives appeared were analysed. As Schiffrin (1987: 70) puts it, this functions as "sequential and distributional accountability" which is "an attempt to account for the occurrence of a DM within a discourse". Sequential accountability means that each contribution to a sequence is
both anaphoric and cataphoric, i.e., it reflects prior context and helps create upcoming context. The sequential accountability for each subcategory of the conjunctive relations is exclusive to that category, such as the semantic contents of S1 and S2 for additive connectives, the polysemy of the adversative connectives, the textual sequencing surrounding causal-conditional connectives and the time scenes in S1 and S2 for the temporal connectives. However, initiality of the position of connectives was not regarded as a distinctive feature for selecting the connectives. Nonetheless, systemic-functional grammarians such as Halliday argue that the first part of an utterance often plays a critical role in conveying or creating a relationship or revealing a dependency on prior text. Thus, the analysis of the progression of a sequence provides a means through which one can understand the connective's contribution to the structure and the significance of a particular discourse. The limitation of applying sequence-initiality as a selection criterion for the connectives is particularly apparent in the case of Kurdish connectives as well as some of the English connectives. For example, Kurdish connectives like cûnke, belam, keçi, belkû and English connectives like for never occur in the initial position of S1 in texts. On the other hand, distributional accountability is an attempt to explain all occurrences of a connective within a corpus. This kind of explanation would account not only for occurrences of a connective, but also for its variable appearances in expected positions.

3.2.4 Selection criteria for the translators

I asked 50 translators to conduct the translation, but received 32 replies only. Nonetheless, the data received from 32 translators showed broadly comparable choices to verify the equivalences provided for the English connectives and the equivalences provided for the Kurdish ones. The 32 translators were asked to translate only the given connectives and they were provided with the contexts that appear in the current thesis. The overall criteria for selecting the translators were that they must all be Kurdish, qualified and professional translators, graduates from English and Translation departments, bilingual, they must have at least two years of translation practice and they had to be living and/or working in bilingual and/or multilingual contexts.
3.3 Methods of data analysis

All the text samples extracted from the opinion articles from the English and Kurdish newspapers were divided into four main categories depending on the relation signalled between the segments such as additive, adversative, causal-conditional and temporal. The analytical procedure consisted of three steps as follows: segmenting the texts into units, coding and describing the semantic relations among the textual segments (units) and identifying the connectives at unit boundaries.

3.3.1 Text segmentation

The segments presented in this thesis are extracted from the opinion articles collected as data. The text samples had to be divided into units and the unit boundaries were identified. The unit boundaries in the current thesis are above the clausal level. That is, the combined segments could be two or more clauses in a compound sentence, two or more simple, complex or compound sentences. Following Fraser, I will use "discourse segment" as a general term to refer to 'proposition', 'sentence', 'utterance' and 'message' (1999: 938). The sequences of the textual segments were labelled as S1 and S2, referring to Segment 1 and Segment 2, as follows:

Textual segment 1 (S1) (a sentence or a group of sentences). Textual segment 2 (S2) (a sentence or a group of sentences).

The place of the connective is not indicated in the sample text above, because this depends on the characteristics of particular connectives. That is, certain connectives like because or if can occur in the initial position of S1 or initial position of S2, while other connectives such as but or for can only occur in the initial position of S2 and never in the initial position of S1. For this reason, the different occurrences of each connective were outlined to show the different positions each connective occupies. For instance, for each connective (if applicable) the text segmentations were:

1- [Connective S1, S2]
2- [S1. Connective S2]
3- [S1 connective S2]
These different occurrences were outlined in order to show the diversity of the positions of each connective in both languages. These positions were important to notice, because they could have implications for the different characteristics that each connective exhibits. For instance, according to the data in the current study, the Kurdish additive connective \textit{w} and the English causal connective can never occur in the positions 1, 2 and 4, but only in position 3.

3.3.2 Coding

The coding applied to the textual segments in each sub-category of the conjunctive relations varied from one type of relation to the other in the current thesis. This is because each relation exhibits specific features in the combined segments such as the semantic contents of the Ss in \textit{additive relations}, the polysemy of connectives in \textit{adversative relations}, the textual positioning in \textit{causal-conditional} and time scenes of S1 and S2 in \textit{temporal relations}. In addition, Relevance Theory is applied to the analysis of the relations in the current study, where each relation "shows relevance" between the two combined segments in a specific way (Sperber and Wilson, 2000: 231) to create subcategories of relation for each of the Hallidayan connectives. Each of the subcategories is discussed in Chapters 4, 5, 6 and 7 in the thesis, but is described in brief as follows. The additive relations are coded S1 + S2, meaning that both S1 and S2 have similar compatible information that can be added to each other. The adversative relations are divided into four main procedures like S1 \textit{denied} by S2, S1 \textit{corrected} by S2, S1 \textit{contrasted} by S2 and S1 \textit{cancelled} by S2. The causal relations are coded according to the direction of the relation and divided into two main directions such as S1 \textit{causes} S2 and S1 \textit{caused by} S2. The conditional relation is coded by the relation between a \textit{condition} and a \textit{result} or a \textit{condition} and, if fulfilled, the \textit{achievement}.

As for the temporal relations, they are coded according to the time scenes embedded in the textual segments. For example, the relations between the two time scenes could be \textit{sequential}, S1 \textit{subsequent to} S2, or S1 \textit{previous to} S2; simultaneous, S1 time overlaps with S2 time; \textit{terminal}, S1 terminates by the start of S2. These codes comply with the notion of procedural account of Relevance Theory. That is, the coding reveals the relevance
(relation) between the connected segments and thus reveals the type of the relation that is signalled by the connective.

In terms of the morphological glossing of the translation samples, it is conducted according to the Leipzig Glossing Rules which have been developed jointly by the Department of Linguistics of the Max Planck Institute for Evolutionary Anthropology (Bernard Comrie, Martin Haspelmath) and by the Department of Linguistics of the University of Leipzig (Balthasar Bickel) (See Appendix One). The convention comprises ten rules for the "syntax" and "semantics" of interlinear glosses, and an appendix with a proposed "lexicon" of abbreviated category labels (Croft, 2003: xix-xxv)

3.3.3 Translation as a practice

Translation was part of the method of analysis in the current thesis in order to identify the Kurdish connectives and compare them to the existing English ones. As described in Section 3.3.1, the translation task was to translate all connectives under investigation in the current thesis from English into Kurdish and vice versa. Because of the bulk of translation needed for all the text samples presented here, I had to translate the text samples by myself (I am a licensed translator under legal oath). However, in order to achieve objectivity in terms of translating the connectives from each language into the other, I relied on 32 professional Kurdish translators to translate only the connectives and I provided them with the original contexts. Then their responses were added to a table in order to see the different options they have provided for each connective. As the current study is the first study to be conducted on connectives between English and Sorani Dialect, I needed to build taxonomies for Kurdish connectives in order to show their equivalences in English. This will help future studies to build on the current taxonomy and to further develop it (See table 5). The dominant choices (the high frequency choices) are presented in bold font and the other variants are presented in ordinary font. The most frequent choice is considered as typical equivalence for each connective.
Table 5 Statistics of the translation choices for English connectives by 32 Kurdish translators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Relation</th>
<th>Subtypes</th>
<th>English Connectives</th>
<th>Kurdish Connectives</th>
<th>Number of translators who made this choice out of 32</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>and</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>herweha</td>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple</td>
<td></td>
<td>as well as</td>
<td>herweha</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>serbari</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sereřai</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>or</td>
<td>ya(n)</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nor</td>
<td>ne...ne</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additive</td>
<td></td>
<td>furthermore</td>
<td>sereřai</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>herweha</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>in addition</td>
<td>serbari</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>legel eweşda</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>herweha</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>besides</td>
<td>çige le</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lepal emeşda</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>also</td>
<td>§</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>hem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>herweha</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>w</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apposition</td>
<td></td>
<td>in other words</td>
<td>be wateyeki tîr</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>be layeki tîr</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>that is</td>
<td>bew manaye</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>kewate</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I mean</td>
<td>wate</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>for example</td>
<td>bo nimûne</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>for instance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison</td>
<td>thus</td>
<td>bem jore</td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kewate</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similarly</td>
<td>herweha</td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by contrast</td>
<td>lelayeki tır</td>
<td></td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>be pêçewanewe</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denial</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>keçi</td>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>belam</td>
<td></td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yet</td>
<td>legel ewesda</td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>belam</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(al)though</td>
<td>egerçi</td>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>legel ewei</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>despite this</td>
<td></td>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>legel ewei</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>belam</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adversative</td>
<td>in fact</td>
<td>le ţastida</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actually</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>belam</td>
<td></td>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>however</td>
<td>legel ewesda</td>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>le katêkda</td>
<td></td>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>belam</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrast</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>be pêçewanewe</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>belam</td>
<td></td>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>legel ewesda</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correction</td>
<td>instead</td>
<td>keçi</td>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>belam</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>but</td>
<td>belkû</td>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>belam</td>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Causal-Conditional</td>
<td>Rather</td>
<td>belkû</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at least</td>
<td>hiçnebê</td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>be layeni kem</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I mean</td>
<td>wate</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Cancellation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>except</th>
<th>bècege le</th>
<th>32</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nevertheless</td>
<td>be herhal</td>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>legel eweşda</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>belam</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Iconic Causal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>because</th>
<th>leber ewei</th>
<th>18</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>leber ewei, çünk e</td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so</td>
<td>kewate</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>then</td>
<td>leber ewe</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>therefore</td>
<td>leber ewe</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consequently</td>
<td>boye</td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>çünk e</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thus</td>
<td>bew şeweya</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>çünk e</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in order to</td>
<td>bo eway</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so that</td>
<td>takû</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hetakû</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since</td>
<td>behoy ewei</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as long as</td>
<td>hetakû</td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>heta</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Non-iconic causal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Because</th>
<th>çünk e</th>
<th>16</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>leber ewei</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
<td>leber ewe</td>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>çünk e</td>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Expression</td>
<td>Translation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>In order to</strong></td>
<td>bo ewei</td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Since</strong></td>
<td>behoy ewei</td>
<td></td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>çûnke</td>
<td></td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>As long as</strong></td>
<td>hetakû</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>heta</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>If</strong></td>
<td>eger</td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Even if</strong></td>
<td>heta eger</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>meger</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Otherwise</strong></td>
<td>eger na</td>
<td></td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>egina</td>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unless</strong></td>
<td>tenha eger</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eger</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lest</strong></td>
<td>nek</td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>If</strong></td>
<td>eger</td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Even if</strong></td>
<td>heta eger</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eger</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unless</strong></td>
<td>meger</td>
<td></td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenha eger</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Before</strong></td>
<td>pêş</td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>After</strong></td>
<td>paşan</td>
<td></td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>leber ewe</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Next</strong></td>
<td>paşan</td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Then</strong></td>
<td>inca</td>
<td></td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Until</strong></td>
<td>ta</td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Now</strong></td>
<td>ësta</td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The use of translation in comparative studies has been a viable approach to the comparison between languages as Catford states that "the theory of translation is concerned with a certain type of relation between languages and is consequently a branch of comparative linguistics" (1965: 20). There are several classifications of translation types, among which is Catford’s (1965) who presented three criteria to identify types of translation, such as the extent of translation (full translation vs. partial translation), grammatical rank (at which the translation equivalence is established (rank-bound translation vs. unbounded translation) and the level of language involvement (total or restricted translation). However, Snell-Hornby argues that "the translation process cannot simply be reduced to a linguistic exercise only", as claimed by Catford, since there are other factors, such as "textual, cultural and situational aspects" that need to be taken into consideration in translation, which do not always match from one language to another (1995: 20). Baker's (1992) approach to equivalence seems to be more fine-grained than Catford's, as she offers a more detailed list of conditions by which the concept of equivalence can be defined. Her account of equivalence involves different levels in relation to the translation process, such as "lexical, grammatical, textual and pragmatic levels" (1992: 11). For the sake of research limitations, the current thesis will only be interested in the establishment of equivalences at the lexical and textual levels, since the focus is on pairing connectives between English and Kurdish examples. According to Baker, equivalence at word level is "the first step a translator takes into consideration" in order to find direct equivalents between source language (SL) and target language (TL) (1992: 12). In this regard, connectives could be the most complex words that the translator must deal with. In case of English-Kurdish translation, translators will face two challenges: First the multi-functionality and polysemy of certain English connectives and second, lack of a well-defined classification of Kurdish connectives.

Therefore, I established paradigms of correspondences between and among English and Kurdish connectives and linked the approach with the framework of Relevance Theory in order to account for the constraints of the individual connectives on the relations they
signal in argumentative texts. The method of correspondence paradigms has been used by Aijmer et al (2006) to conduct a contrastive study between English and French connectives. They arrived at significant results via creating correspondence networks. The effectiveness of this method lies in the fact that "translations force one to account for the contextual factors that lead to particular choices." (Aijmer et al, 2006: 112). In this regard, this research examines the translation options of each connective from English into Kurdish and vice versa.

In order to provide translation options for the connectives, 32 Kurdish translators were commissioned to translate all the connectives under investigation in the current study from English into Kurdish and vice versa. The sole purpose of the translation task was to collect translation data from real sources instead of depending on my own experience and intuition as a translator, because of the risk of my "intuitions becoming a slave to the emerging pattern and soon become corrupted" (Fraser, 2005: 1). However, dealing with connectives in a single language is in itself a difficult task, as they are usually multifunctional and could be polysemous. Therefore, Fraser states that "there is often more than one DM that will occur in a given slot" (2005: 2). This is doubly challenging when dealing with connectives in translation, as there could be multiple translation options in TL (Target Language) for a single connective in SL (Source Language). For example, the English but is a polysemous connective that has four different equivalences in Kurdish, based on the specific contexts, such as belkû, belam, be pêçewanewe and keçi.

Another challenge with the translation task was that there were mistranslations of the connectives in the data. One reason for the mistranslation could be lack of proper definition and classification of the conjunctive relations and connectives in Kurdish. Although there are several English-Kurdish and Kurdish-English dictionaries, there is no classification of connectives in Kurdish that outlines all possible connectives that signal conjunctive relations; it is hard to find equivalences for the English connectives in Kurdish. That’s because translators are guided by the meaning of expressions and not by reference works. This could also pose challenges for Kurdish translators when translating from Kurdish into English. Therefore, the primary aim of the current thesis is to build paradigms of correspondences between the English and Kurdish connectives that signal conjunctive relations, in order to help translators see the similarities and differences between the English and Kurdish connectives.
The primary purpose of the translation task was to identify the most frequent options for each connective in each language which was then taken as the most suitable equivalence for the individual connectives. The less frequent translations were discarded in the correspondence paradigms in all four subcategories of the conjunctive relations and do not form the main basis for discussion in the analysis chapters that follow. Including each and every option given by the translators did not allow a clear pattern of categorisation to emerge. In order to identify the frequencies of the translation options, each equivalent offered in the translation task was counted against the total number of the translators (32 translators). Then, the most frequent options were selected as the most suitable equivalences. This process was conducted for the connectives in each language separately. This process of two-way translation created a network of connectives for each language under each subtype of conjunctive relations.

3.3.4 Application of Relevance Theory to modify Halliday and Hasan’s (1976) classification of conjunctive relations

Relevance theory is employed to describe the semantic relations between sentences and paragraphs and to reveal the polysemy and multi-functionality of each connective in English and Kurdish in the current thesis. The modifications of Halliday and Hasan’s (1976) classification of conjunctive relations are inspired by the procedural approach of Relevance Theory (RT) to account for the features and functions of connectives. According to RT, connectives are considered to signal meanings generated by their procedural function, rather than having semantic values themselves. For instance, a connective like but does not have a denotative meaning of its own in an abstract sense, but when used in a context to connect two textual segments it can signal four semantic relations such as denial of expectation, correction, contrast and cancellation. So, it is the procedural account (how the connective is used) that outlines the features and functions of the connectives rather than the semantic content of the connective in a decontextualized sense. According to RT's procedural approach, readers usually look for relevance between and among segments in a text, where the connective helps them to reach the relevance faster and more effectively and thus helps achieve better cohesion in the text. Moreover, connectives like and, w; but, belam; so, kewate; if, eger; then, paşan guide the interpretation process by specifying particular properties of context and contextual effects. The specifications or constraints of interpretations are called procedural meanings in terms of Relevance Theory. Blakemore
states that the aim of using connectives is "to minimise processing costs" i.e. to help the reader understand the links between textual segments more easily (1987: 76). According to Blakemore (2000: 478), Relevance Theory claims that each connective "encodes instructions for achieving one of the following contextual effects":

P = newly presented information and C = old information

1) The derivation of contextual implications: the derivation of a new assumption in a deduction which crucially involves the combination of P and C.

2) Strengthening an existing assumption: the effect derived when an assumption in C is independently derived from a new set of premises that includes P.

3) Contradiction and elimination: the effect derived when a contradiction between P and C is resolved by eliminating C.

Based on this approach, the definition of the connectives seems to be unproblematic, because, unlike the various items previously analysed as connectives, only the items that encode "procedural meaning" would be included in the analysis. This in turn forms another criterion for selecting the connectives for analysis. The distinction between conceptual and procedural meaning is central to the RT approach. For example, items that have conceptual meaning such as adverbials, *frankly* and prepositional phrases, *in other words* contribute to the content of statement. They have semantic values and encode meaning. On the contrary, items with procedural meaning such as connectives *but, belam; so, ke* among others encode information about how the contents of the combined segments are to be used in inference. Consequently, connectives do not contribute to the proposition expressed by a sentence, rather they direct the reader to the context in which the message is "expected to be processed" and "the conclusions that should be drawn from it" (Rouchota, 1996: 6). For instance, the difference between *but* and *in contrast* is that the former does not have conceptual meaning, therefore it is difficult to know the meaning of *but* but easier to know how it is used. On the other hand, *in contrast* contributes to the propositional content of the combined segments, because of the word *contrast*. As a result, the meaning of *contrast* or *comparison* will transfer to the relation between the two segments.

The distinction between conceptual and procedural meaning is not made in Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification. There is no isomorphic relation between a given lexical item and the connective relation that it signals. The resulting overlaps between the connectives
in the Hallidayan classification mean that it is very difficult to assign each connective to a specific relation in a singular fashion. The Hallidayan framework depends heavily on the grammatical functions of the connectives rather than the semantic and pragmatic aspects that play important roles in recognising the connectives as a subset of discourse markers. As a result, Halliday and Hasan (1976) have not outlined all the characteristics of the connectives that are found in written texts in particular (i.e. they did not work from ‘bottom up’ analysis of items in a given dataset), but rather generalised the classification for spoken and written modes as a conceptual system of choices. However, Relevance Theory can be applied to data from the ‘bottom up’ and used to outline the characteristics of (in principle) all connectives. Chapters 4, 5, 6 and 7 outline the major refinements to the Hallidayan framework and analyse, according to the principles of the Relevance Theory, each connective that signals conjunctive relations in both languages.

3.4 Conclusions

Chapter three outlined the methodology for data collection and analysis along with the application of Relevance Theory to Halliday and Hasan’s (1976) classification of conjunctive relations in light of translation practices. Although the methodology for analysing the connectives was mainly qualitative, a quantitative approach was also used to select English and Kurdish connectives (that is, the translation equivalences were selected on the grounds of their frequency, while the analysis itself is more concerned with identifying patterns which these frequently occurring items constitute).

Relevance Theory is used to modify Halliday and Hasan’s (1976) classification of conjunctive relations because the existing classification did not clearly show the distribution of the connectives into the categories of conjunctive relations, as it was heavily dependent on the grammatical functions of the connectives rather than their semantic and pragmatic features. Thus, the new classification employed in this thesis analyses the connectives through the procedural approach within the framework of Relevance Theory, where the connectives are accounted for based on their signalling potentials taking into consideration the grammatical, semantic and pragmatic aspect of the connectives. Finally, translation is necessitated for the sake of the comparative nature of the study and to verify Kurdish connectives.
CHAPTER FOUR: ADDITIVE RELATIONS IN ENGLISH AND KURDISH

4.0 Introduction

This chapter looks at the additive relations and connectives outlined in Halliday and Hasan (1976). It will test how far the Hallidayan framework of the additive relations can be applied to Kurdish connectives and illustrate the value of using Relevance Theory to make plain the nature of each additive subcategory. In so doing, this chapter will categorise Kurdish additive relations and connectives corresponding to the English list through the use of the translation technique of paradigms of correspondences (Aijmer et al, 2006).

Halliday (1994) states that the additive relation is "the relation between two like elements of equal status, one initiating and the other continuing" (1994:219). That is, the additive relations are symmetrical, and changing the order of the segments does not change the meaning of the relation. According to Loos et al (2003) the additive relation is "an interpersonal relation, in which the propositions are judged either to be closely related or built one on another" (2003). The additive connectives discussed in this chapter are those that link textual segments of semantic similarity. The semantic similarity between S1 and S2 in the text can be recognised in four ways, according to the Hallidayan framework, described by Halliday and Hasan (1976: 242) as "simple, complex, appositional and comparative". Halliday and Hasan pointed out that the simple additive relation is the basic "and-relation" in the sense of "next in a series (of things to be said)" (1976: 245). This relation could be more complex (or in their terms, "emphatic") when the added information in S2 is meant to emphasize "the additionalness" of S2 (Ibid: 246). However, the term "emphatic" is somewhat subjective and it is hard to measure in written genres where there is no tonal element to explicitly indicate emphasis. The difficulties in differentiating the complex additive relations are explained further in section 4.2 in this chapter.
The other two subtypes of the additive relations (appositional and comparative) are distinctive in the sense that the appositional additive relation indicates that S1 is exemplified by S2, and the comparative additive relation indicates that S1 is compared to S2; whether similar or dissimilar to each other (See sections 4.3 and 4.4). However, other studies do not make the same sub-categorisation. In a recent study, Soile (2007) considers the additive relations as "matching relations" which she has adopted from Hoey (2001), in which she stated that additive relations "do not participate in ordering of things, but statements are linked with a view to what additional information they can give of each other" (2001: 30), quoted from (Soile, 2007: 29). This is in line with Martin's (1992: 185) description of "clause complexes" where there is a sense of dependency between S1 and S2. However, the basic characteristic of the additive relations is that the segments (S1 and S2) in the text need to be two independent entities which are combined in an additive relation. From a pragmatic point of view, Fraser (1996) labels the additive relations "commentary markers", in which the connectives have "the function of emphasizing the force of the basic message" (1996: 186). These studies do not seem to have focused on the subjectivity implicit in the classification of the additive subtypes, but they do show that there is no single, definitive approach for categorising the additive relations.

This chapter attempts to highlight and critique the subjectivity inherent in the Hallidayan framework of the additive relations by applying the principles of Relevance Theory to each subcategory, and by comparing the existing English classification of the additive relations to the Kurdish data in the current study. The main characteristics used to classify the four subtypes of the additive relations and connectives in this chapter include:

1) the distinction between the structural and textual functions of the additive connectives,

2) the position of the connectives; whether that be the initial position of S1 or S2, and

3) the procedural accounts of the connectives that signal additive relations.

The first characteristic differentiates between the conjunctions that only have a grammatical function in combining two constituents of a single sentence (fulfilling a structural relation) and the conjunctions that can signal a semantic relation between two textual segments (which fulfil a cohesive relation) in addition to their grammatical function. The second aspect of interest relating to the additive connectives focuses on the possible positions in which the connective can occur (whether they occur in the initial
position of S1 or S2) and identifies the relations they signal in each position (if different). Lastly, the third characteristic relates Relevance Theory's procedural account to each connective in order to account for textual functions of the connectives, in which they signal semantic relations between the segments of a text (S1 and S2). These three features are discussed in the process of classifying the Kurdish additive connectives. A substitution test is also applied to English and Kurdish additive connectives in light of these three characteristics in order to outline the distinctive features of each connective in both languages (See sections 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, and 4.4).

As mentioned in Chapter Two (Section 2.7.1), The Hallidayan framework of the additive relations is not modified at the macro level of the classification, because each category of relations had fairly distinctive characteristics. However, the structural/textual distinction in the functions of the connectives had to be examined in the current study in order to reduce the number of different types of the elements regarded as connectives on the micro level in the classification, i.e., excluding the coordinating conjunctions and focusing on the additive connectives only. Although Halliday and Hasan (1976) acknowledged the existence of structural/textual functions of connectives, they did not consider this distinction in the way they distinguished subcategories of the additive connectives, as they state that "the distinction between these two is not of primary significance for the purposes of textual cohesion" (1976: 244). Therefore, the Hallidayan framework includes both the structural and the textual functions of the additive connectives, but the classification in the current study only focuses on the textual functions of the additive connectives. Table 6 outlines Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification of the English additive relations and connectives accompanied by a corresponding list of Kurdish additive connectives.
Table 6: English and Kurdish additive relations and connectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Relation</th>
<th>Subtypes</th>
<th>English Connectives</th>
<th>Frequency out of 38572 tokens</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Kurdish Connectives</th>
<th>Frequency out of 36988 tokens</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simple</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>297</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>421</td>
<td>1.13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>as well as</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>herweha</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>ya(n)</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nor</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>ne...ne</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex</td>
<td>furthermore</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>serbari</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in addition</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.007</td>
<td>sereţai</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>besides</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>cige le</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>also</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in other words</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td>be wateyeki tır</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apposition</td>
<td>that is</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>bew manaye</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I mean</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>wate</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>for example</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>bo numûne</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.008</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>for instance</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.007</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>thus</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.007</td>
<td>bem jore</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison</td>
<td>similarly</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>herweha</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.016</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>by contrast</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>lelayeki tır</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOTAL</strong></td>
<td>ENGLISH</td>
<td>404</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>KURDISH</td>
<td>537</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 includes all the additive connectives that are under investigation in this chapter along with their frequencies. The English and Kurdish additive connectives are individually analysed in the following sections with respect to the three qualities of connectives set out earlier. In addition, the translation behaviour of each connective is
examined in order to verify the Kurdish taxonomy of the additive relations and connectives.

4.1 Simple additive relation

Halliday and Hasan refer to the simple additive relation as the simplest form of the "and-relation" (1976: 244). However, they do not define what "simple" means, rather they link the notion of "simple" to the type of the relation that is held between the combined segments, as they pointed out that the simplest form of the "and-relation" is signalled by and which has the sense of "there is something more to be said" (1976: 245). However, this definition is subjective, as the "something more" could be an emphasis and thus could cause confusion with the "complex additive relations" (Ibid: 246). The subjectivity inherent in this definition is illustrated in the current study via application of Relevance Theory's procedural account to the Hallidayan framework of additive relations, and through the application of a substitution test between and among the additive connectives. The substitution test shows that the notion of emphasis is relative. On one hand, some connectives like and and as well as in English and w and herweha in Kurdish do not upgrade the sense of emphasis in either of the segments, while other connectives like in addition, furthermore, ş, hem...hem do upgrade the degree of emphasis in the segments in which they occur. On the other hand, connectives like besides, in addition to, bécge le, serbari downgrade the degree of emphasis on the segment in which they occur, and thus the emphasis would be on the other segment (See section 4.2.1). Relevance Theory’s procedural account indicates that the simple additive relation is signalled by connectives that constrain the S2 to be the added information to the information in S1. So, the procedural account in case of the simple additive relation is usually S1 information S2 added information. According to Halliday and Hasan the addition of the information in S2, in case of the simple additive relations, does not emphasize "the additionalness" of the relation (1976: 246). That is why the relation is called the simple additive relation. In a study of English textual systems, Martin suggested that simple additive relations are "realised through connectives which are used to extend a text" (1992: 168). Martin's suggestion also involves a great deal of subjectivity, as the extension of a text can be done not only through simple additive relations but through all other additive relations, like complex, appositional and comparative additive relations. The current study uses a
substitution test of the additive connectives in order to explain the notion of (simple) in the simple additive relations (See sections 4.1.1, 4.1.2 and 4.1.3). Both the data from the opinion articles and the translation data in the current study suggested that the connectives which implement this type of procedure in English include *and, as well as, or, nor* and in Kurdish, they are *w, herweha, ya(n), ne...ne*. Following Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification of additive relations, I have divided the simple additive relations into three subcategories, namely, additive, alternative and negative additive relations, based on the specific connectives that signal them.

### 4.1.1 Additive

According to the Hallidayan framework the meaning of the simple additive relation is "next in a series (of things to be said)" (Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 236). In terms of the principles of Relevance Theory, the general procedural account implemented in this type of the additive relations is S1 information S2 added information to the same effect of the one of S1. The data from the opinion articles, as presented in table 6, showed that the simple additive relation is signalled by *and* and *as well as* in English and in Kurdish it is signalled by *w*, and *herweha*.

*and*

The English additive connective *and* has been studied widely in the English literature and across various genres such as academic discourse, fiction, conversation and news discourse. In their data of sentence-initial and turn-initial coordinators, Biber et al (1999: 83) pointed out that *and* is more frequently used in conversation than in fiction. They also claim that "in academic prose the use of sentence-initial coordination seems to be avoided" (Ibid: 84). In an earlier study, Smith and Frawley (1983) stated that "although conjunction as a whole is not used very often as a cohesive device in Modern English, avoidance of sentence-initial conjunctions only applies to scientific writers" (1983: 354). Both studies showed that journalism also uses initial coordinators more frequently, although this might also have to do with the occurrence of dialogue and quoted speech in both "narrating and press reporting" (Biber et al. 1999: 85). Similarly, the data in the current study showed that the English and Kurdish opinion articles use additive connectives more frequently than the
other types of the conjunctive connectives especially *and* (0.77%) and *w* (1.13%), whereas none of the other connectives were as frequently used as these two. Nonetheless, the claim of "sentence-initiality" (Halliday and Hasan, 1976; Biber et al, 1999; Smith and Frawley, 1983) of the additive connectives does not apply to the Kurdish *w*, as it can never occur in the initial position of S1 and it is never preceded by a full stop, as suggested by the data from Kurdish opinion articles (See the following section on *w*).

One reason for the high frequency of *and* would be that it can have two functions (1) structural (grammatical); combining two words or phrases in a single sentence and (2) textual (semantic); combining two independent textual segments in a text. The latter function of *and* is focused on in the current study, in which *and* functions as an additive connective combining two segments in a text. In terms of Relevance Theory’s procedural account, *and* constrains S2 to be the added information to the piece of information mentioned in S1, as presented in examples 1 and 2.

S1. *And* S2

1) When Bill Clinton lurched rightwards to secure re-election in 1996, he had at least the benefit of a strong economy. *And* Republicans got the politics of standing by their principles wrong. 7

Katêk Bil Klinton dûbare helbjardnewei msogerkrd le sali 1996, belayeni kem abûriyekî behêzi lepštewê bû. *Herweha* komariyekaniş be hele le syaseti pêdagrtn leser birwbawêfekanyan têgeiştbûn.

(Back translation)

When Bill Clinton secured his re-election in 1996, he had at least the back up of a strong economy. *And* Republicans misunderstood the politics of insisting on their principles.

---

2) His economy, like ours, is crying out for more jobs, and all Washington can deliver is cuts.\footnote{Editorial, 31/07/2011  http://www.guardian.co.uk/commentisfree/2011/jul/31/us-debt-crisis-obama-cuts}

Abûri ew, wekû hi ême, be dest kemî karewe denalênen w Waştonişiş tenha detwanê kemkrndewei heli kar baxterû.

(Back translation)

His economy, like ours, is struggling with lack of job opportunities, and Washington can only suggest cuts

The procedure implemented in examples 1 and 2 is that and constrains the position of S2 to added information to the information mentioned in S1. The constraint imposed by and on S1 and S2 is that both segments should be of equal importance, and that S2 is simply an addition to S1 without emphasis. The connective and in examples 1 and 2 can be substituted by several complex additive connectives like further, furthermore, in addition but the reader would feel that the relation between the two segments is not just a simple addition and in such a case the degree of emphasis on S2 would be increased. Also, these complex additive connectives can be added to and in examples 1 and 2 without affecting the syntactic structure of the sentence, but there would be more attention on S2 in this case. So, it can be said that the complex additive connectives can normally be added to and in order to stress the information in the segment containing them. The translation data in the current study showed that all occurrences of and were translated into Kurdish as w except the occurrence of and in the initial position of a sentence which was translated into Kurdish as herweha as in examples 1 and 2. The reason why and in initial position is not translated into Kurdish as w is because w never occurs in the initial position of a text in Kurdish.

w (and)

The data from the Kurdish opinion articles showed that w (1.13\%) is the most frequently used Kurdish connective among all other connectives. Tofiq defines w as an "Amrazi Lêkder" (conjunction particle) and states that w functions on different levels as "lexical,
phrasal and clausal" (2002: 214). Similar to and, w can have a structural as well as a textual function in Kurdish, whereas unlike and, w neither occurs at the beginning of a sentence nor at the beginning of a paragraph. This has a substantial effect on the frequency of w as an additive connective, since excluding the occurrence of w on the word and phrasal level would reduce its overall frequency in the data. Consequently, the only cases of w that were considered for analysis in the current thesis were the ones in which w combined two or more clauses and signalled an additive relation. Also, when w links more than one clause, it is usually repeated before every clause, unlike English and, which is used only before the final entry in a combined group of clauses. The procedure implemented by w is that S2 is restricted to added information to be combined with the information mentioned in S1, as in example 3.

S1 w S2

3) Serbari ew kêşanei ūkûmeti herêm legel Báxda heyeti w ew kêše najêgirei řûbêru kompanya nèwdewlîyêkanî newt debêtewe le bakûr, newt w gazî Kurdistan hêșta zor layen boxoi ŋadekêşêt.

*Addition to these problems-POSS government-POSS region withPREP Baghdad hadPST andCONJ thisDEM atmosphere nonNEG-stable –bePRE facing company international–DEF-ART oil being inPREP north, oil and gas-POSS Kurdistan still many people forPREP-POSS-3S grab –bePRE-3S-AGR.*

In addition to the problems that the regional government has with Baghdad and the unstable situation that challenges the international oil companies in the north, Kurdistan’s oil and gas are still attracting many companies to come.

In example 3, the writer uses w to add more details to the topic by adding a piece of information in S2 "the oil business in Iraq", in which he adds another problem into the list of issues between "Kurdistan Regional government" and "the central government in Baghdad". In this regard, Halliday and Hasan write that the sense of simple additive relation is "next in a series (of things to be said)" (1976: 236). This shows that the general procedure of the simple additive relation applies to w in which S1 is restricted to a piece of information and S2 constrained to be added information without specific focus on S1 or

---

S2. The substitution test reveals that \( w \) can be substituted by \( \text{herweha}, \, \text{ş}, \, \text{hem...hem}, \) but (similar to the case of English \text{and} \) the relation between the two segments would then imply a stronger additive relation (more emphasis) than the simple additive relation signalled by \( w \). Similar to the case of \text{and} all other additive connectives in Kurdish can be added to \( w \) in order to increase emphasis in the segment where the connectives occur. The translation data in the current study also confirmed that \( w \) is translated into English as \text{and} in such cases, as chosen by 25 Kurdish translators out of 32.

The patterns in which \( w \) occurred in the Kurdish opinions articles and analysed here seem to be at odds with the claims made by Ali (1992: 11) who suggested that \( w \) does not combine two questions in Kurdish texts and that it does not combine two texts whose tenses and syntactic patterns are different. However, it is evident in the data that \( w \) could function as a connective to signal the simple additive relation between two questions and it could even combine textual elements with two different tenses, as in example 4.

S1, \( w \) S2

4) Kei ew du idareye yekdegrnewe \( w \) con yekdegrneweke berewedecet?\(^{10}\)

*When thisDEM two administration union-hold-3P-AGR and how union-hold-DEF-ART organise-wouldPRF-be-doneV?*

When do these two administrations merge \text{and} how would the merge be executed?

The Kurdish connective \( w \) in example 4 can be substituted by \( \text{herweha}, \, \text{ş}, \, \text{hem...hem} \) and \( \text{ş} \). However, the relation signalled between the two segments would then imply a higher degree of emphasis on the second segment. Also, Kurdish complex additive connectives \( \text{hem...hem}, \, \text{ş}, \) and \( \text{herweha} \) can be added to \( w \) in order to achieve more emphasis on the segment with contains them. Within the Kurdish studies on conjunction and coordination, there is a general sense that \( wa \) is considered as a different conjunction from \( w \) and that \( wa \) signals a more complex additive relation than \( w \). For example, Ibrahim considers "\( wa \)" as a genuine Kurdish conjunction "amrazî lêkder" and lists \( wa \) along with \( w \) as two different conjunctions in Kurdish (1980: 34). However, Ibrahim (1980: 35) does not provide

examples from actual data, but rather uses examples of his own creation to support this claim, as shown in example 5a.

5a) Eme yekem jare dème êre wa dawahemin jarişm debêt.

ThisDEM first time-1S-AGR-is come-1S toPREP-here-DEM and last time-POSS-1S wouldPRF-be-3S-AGR.

This is my first time to come here and it would be my last.

The claim that wa is a Kurdish conjunction particle was rejected by the council of the Kurdish Academy, who stated that "wa" is actually an Arabic conjunction particle but it is usually found in informal spoken Kurdish discourse (Kurdish Academia, 2011: 177). Despite this statement by the Kurdish Academia, Ibrahim (1980) insists that wa has penetrated Kurdish as an independent conjunction, "because of the substantial impact of Arabic language on Kurdish". Nevertheless, Kurdish Academia's argument seems to be stronger, because "wa" is in fact not different from w, as it can be substituted by w without any impact on the actual relation that is being signalled in the text, as illustrated in example 5b.

5b) Eme yekem jare dème êre w dawahemin jarişm debêt.

ThisDEM first time-1S-AGR-is come-1S toPREP-here-DEM and last time-POSS-1S wouldPRF-be-3S-AGR.

This is my first time to come here and it would be my last.

The data from the Kurdish opinion articles and the translation data in the current study suggested that w has very similar characteristics to herweha and that herweha is also translated into English as and.

herweha (and)

The Kurdish connective herweha is different from w and ş with regard to its position in the text and its multi-functionality. Unlike these other two connectives, herweha always occupies the initial position of a sentence or a paragraph and it always adds a similar proposition to that of the previous one in the text. Depending on its context, it could be
translated into English as *and, as well as and in addition*. The translation data showed that in order to translate *herweha* as *and*, it should be in the initial position of a sentence or a paragraph. However, the different positions in the text do not change its function as a connective and its multi-functionality is not constrained by these different positions in the sentence; wherever it occurs in the text it is always used as a connective. This flexibility is incompatible with claim made about English connectives that initiality is one of the criteria for recognising connectives as cohesive devices (Halliday and Hasan, 1976; Fraser, 1999; Brinton, 1996). According to the data from the Kurdish opinion articles the occurrence of *herweha* could be either of these forms:

- S1 herweha S2
- S1, herweha S2
- S1. *Herweha* S2
- S1 (PARAGRAPH). *Herweha* S2

The procedure implemented by *herweha* when signalling a simple additive relation is that S1 is restricted to information or a statement and S2 to the added information, as in example 6.

S1. *Herweha* S2

6) Kompanyai Merfi Oil le kotayi mangi azar řaigeyend ke dwem kert le Kurdistan dest pêdekat. *Herweha* kompanyai ShaMarani Kanadi le mangi nîsan řaigeyand ke dozîneweyeki gewrei le pîñoêi Atrûş kirdûe.\(^{11}\)

*Company*POSS *Murphy* Oil *inPREP* end*POSS* *month*POSS *of* March *announce* PST-3AGR *that-DEM* second half *inPREP* Kurdistan *hand* doing-3AGR. *And* *Company*POSS *ShaMaran*POSS *Canada* in *month*POSS *April* *announce*-PST -3AGR *that* discovery-INDF-ART *big* in *project* Atrush doneV.

Murphy Oil Corporation announced at the end of March that they will start their second phase in Kurdistan *and* the Canadian ShaMaran Petroleum Corporation announced in April that they have had an important discovery in Atrush Project.

\(^{11}\) Hawramy, 18/07/2011, [http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=9681&z=4&l=1](http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=9681&z=4&l=1)
In example 6, herweha signals a simple additive relation between the two clauses in this compound sentence. The constraint of S1 and S2 in example 6 is that both segments are of equal importance and S2 is simply added information without any emphasis on either of the segments. As mentioned earlier, the notion of emphasis is relative, i.e., some connectives add more emphasis than others. This is evident in the case of herweha in which it can be indicating more emphasis than and, but complex additive connectives can be added to herweha to indicate emphasis in the text, too. Thus, if herweha is substituted by complex additive connectives like hem...hem and ş, there will be more emphasis on the second segment in example 6. Also, if these complex additive connectives are added to herweha there would be even a higher degree of emphasis on the segment containing them. The translation data in the current study showed that when herweha has this procedural meaning and signals the simple additive relation, it is translated into English as and, as chosen by all the 32 Kurdish translators.

*as well as*

The data from the English opinion articles showed that as well as with a percentage of 0.01% is considerably less frequent when compared to and with a percentage of 0.77% throughout the 38,572 words which compose the 40 articles. Similar to and, as well as can function both as a coordinating conjunction and also as an additive connective. However, the use of as well as as a coordinating conjunction is not related to the current study. The relation signalled by as well as is the simple additive relation. The substitution test reveals that as well as can be substituted by and in example 7 without any change in the procedure in which the connectives operate. That is, there will be no effect of gaining or losing emphasis in the relation. Also, the complex additive connectives like in addition, furthermore, and also cannot be added to as well as, because it would produce an awkward English text, as illustrated in example 7.

S1 as well as S2

7) There is a clear imperative to reverse some recent trends and diversify into security technologies as well as *(in addition, furthermore, also)* to integrate more of the civil technology sectors that EADS brings with it.  

---

The procedure in which *as well as* operates is that S1 is restricted to information and S2 is constrained to be the added information. The translation data in the current study suggested that *as well as* can be translated into Kurdish as *herweha* and *w*, as chosen by 19 translators out of 32.

### 4.1.2 Alternative

According to Halliday and Hasan, "alternative" is the basic meaning of the "*or* relation", which conveys "offering of a range of objective alternatives" (1976: 246). In this sense, there is little ground for subjectivity when interpreting the alternative additive relation, as the combined segments represent two choices or questions; it is very hard to locate emphasis in this case. However, Halliday and Hasan also suggested that if S2 is to "stress the alternativeness" in the text, then the relation would be "emphatic" and thus the relation would change to the complex alternative relation (1976: 247). The latter definition indicates that there is an element of subjectivity in the complex alternative relation (See section 4.2.2). The source of emphasis is better seen in the co-occurrence between *or* and *alternatively*, in which the simple alternative relation is signalled by *or* and for the purpose of increasing emphasis, the connective *alternatively* can be added to *or*. In terms of the principles of Relevance Theory, the procedural account implemented by *or* in English and *yan* in Kurdish is that S2 is an alternative interpretation, another possible opinion or explanation in place of the one just given, which is S1. This general procedural account is strictly constrained to presenting alternatives without emphasising either of the segments.

*or*

The English additive connective *or* is similar to *and* and *as well as* in that it can have two functions in the text: structural and textual. According to Halliday and Hasan, it may have a structural function — combining two nouns in a sentence to form one "single constituent" and a textual function — signalling a "semantic relation" above the clausal level (1976: 245). It can also occur flexibly in English texts such as between two statements (example 8), questions (example 9) or choices (example 10).
S1 or S2

8) They are Hapsburg odd or busy running catering businesses.\(^{13}\)

S1? Or S2?

9) The big question is does this destruction lead to our own demise and is that the end game for our existence in Mother Nature’s bigger plan? Do we create our own extinction to save the planet from ourselves? A Shakespearean Tragedy on a colossal scale? Or is this destruction a necessary stepping stone in evolution?\(^{14}\)

S1, or S2

10) *Either* they really thought that a crime committed by a friend somehow didn't matter, or they were so keen to ingratiate themselves with the dominant media player that they never did due diligence.\(^{15}\)

The procedure in which *or* operates in examples 8, 9 and 10 is different from the procedure in which *and* operates in that *and* combines the two segments and presents them as equally important information or statements. However, *or* usually constrains the two segments to be choices rather than a combination of equal entities. That is the procedure implemented by *or* constrains S1 to be a choice, statement or question and S2 to be an alternative. Therefore, the relation signalled by *or* is the simple alternative relation despite the constraints in the procedure implemented by *or*, i.e., not adding similar segments like *and*. Also, the substitution test shows that replacing *or* by *alternatively* in examples 8, 9 and 10 or adding *alternatively to or* would add a sense of emphasis on S2. Halliday and Hasan point out that difference between *and* and *or* is not of "primary significance for purposes of textual cohesion" because both are regarded as connectives that signal additive relations (1976: 244). Regarding the co-occurrence of *or* with *either* as in example 10, Halliday and Hasan claim that the correlative pair *either ... or* does not have a "cohesive function" and


\(^{15}\) Bryant, C. 18/08/2011, [http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/commentators/chris-bryant-there-must-be-no-impunity-2339453.html](http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/commentators/chris-bryant-there-must-be-no-impunity-2339453.html)
that they are "restricted to structural coordination" (Ibid: 244). However, this may not always be true, as in example 10, in which the correlative pair *either...or* signal the simple additive relation based on the procedure in which they operate. The procedure implemented in example 10 is that S2 is an alternative to the statement put forward in S1. The translation data received from the Kurdish translators in the current study suggested that the most frequent equivalence for *or* in Kurdish is *yan*, as chosen by all the 32 translators.

*yan* (or)

The data from the Kurdish opinion articles showed that the connective *yan* has another allomorph: *ya*, which is characteristically identical to *yan*, and implements the same procedural account as *yan*. *Yan*, similar to *or*, can have both the structural and textual functions. Its position in the text is restricted to the initial position of S2 and the Kurdish data in the current study suggested that *yan* can never follow a full stop in Kurdish texts; rather it follows a comma. Thus, the form of the text when using *yan* is usually S1, *yan* S2, as shown in example 11.

11) Emane hemwi fakteri ŋûnen bo alozbûnî barwdoxi Kurdistan w bûnî fšarêki şarawe, *yan* detwanim blêm bûnî metsyeki ŋastewxo leser herêmi Kurdistan…16

*TheseDEM allPOSS factorPOSS clear-2AGR forPREP complex-beingPOSS situationPOSS Kurdistan and existencePOSS pressure hidden, or able-1AGR say existencePOSS dangerPOSS direct on-PREP regionPOSS Kurdistan.*

These are all clear reasons why the situation in Kurdistan is complicated and there is a hidden pressure all around. *Or* there is an imminent danger to Kurdistan.

The procedure in which *yan* operates is that S2 is restricted to an alternative to a statement, choice or a question put forward in S1. Therefore, *yan* signals the simple additive relation in Kurdish texts. Also, the addition of *š* to *yan* in example 11 would certainly add a sense

of emphasis, because Ş is the emphatic connective in Kurdish language which adds emphasis to the relation being signalled in the text (Kurdish Academia, 2009). The translation data in the current study also confirmed that yan is best translated into English as or, as chosen by all the 32 Kurdish translators.

4.1.3 Negative

The Hallidayan framework points out that "the negative form of the additive relation is expressed simply as nor" (Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 245). However, Halliday and Hasan did not give further details or any definition to the negative additive relation. In terms of Relevance Theory, nor implements a procedure in which both propositions in S1 and S2 are rejected as options. The connectives that implement this type of procedure signal the negative additive relation, like nor in English and ne...ne in Kurdish.

nor

The negative form of the or-relation in English is signalled by nor. That is, the negative additive relation implies not S1 and not S2. Similar to or, nor can serve both structural and textual functions. When nor signals a textual relation as the simple additive relation, it usually occurs in the initial position of S2. Initiality seems to be a major characteristic of nor to have a textual function (to be considered a connective), otherwise the combined elements would be regarded as one constituent of a single segment and not two separate textual segments. The most significant characteristic of nor, which makes it different from all other connectives is that it changes the normal structure of S2 to which it is usually attributed. The word order changes to Nor + Aux. + Subject + VP + C, as in examples 12 and 13.

S1. Nor S2

12) But the charity protests that it has no links to Dr Afridi or the CIA [...] Nor has Dr Afridi ever been employed by the charity.17

13) It is not just that poor David Walliams will be at yet graver risk of an upset stomach [...]. **nor** is it just the massacre of fish and other aquatic life-forms.\(^\text{18}\)

Unlike the case of *either...or*, it is very difficult for the correlative *neither...nor* to have a textual function, because it usually has a structural function when used in combination with *neither*. As a result, the combined elements would form a single constituent in the sentence. The procedure in which *nor* operates as a connective is that S1 is a negative choice or statement and S2 is also an added negative statement. Therefore, *nor* signals the simplest additive relation in English texts under this specific procedural account. The translation data in the current study suggested that the most suitable equivalence for *nor* in Kurdish is *ne...ne*, because 21 out of 32 Kurdish translators translated *nor* as *ne...ne*.

**ne...ne (nor)**

The Kurdish connective *ne...ne* has quite similar characteristics to *nor*. *Ne...ne* can also have both a structural and a textual function in Kurdish texts, as observed in the Kurdish data in the current study. The procedure in which *ne...ne* operates is that S1 is a negative choice or statement and S2 is a negative alternative to that mentioned in S1, as in example 14.

14) Eger barwdoxeke bem şêweye břwat, Kurdistan *ne* le řûi siyasyewe berewpêş deçêt *ne* le řûi abûriyewe geše dekat.\(^\text{19}\)

*If situation-DEF-ART in style would-PRF went, Kurdistan not in facePOSS political toward-frontPREP goes-it and not in facePOSS economical grows-3AGR.*

If the situation keeps deteriorating like this, Kurdistan will not progress politically *nor* grow economically and socially.

---


\(^{19}\) Qani’, K. 20/05/2011, [www.sbeiy.com/ku/articles/opinion108383hd](http://www.sbeiy.com/ku/articles/opinion108383hd)
As can be observed from example 14, *ne...ne* is considered the Kurdish equivalence to English *nor*, but *ne...ne* is different from *nor* in that there is no change in the grammatical structure of S2, whereas *nor* usually changes the grammatical structure of S2. Since *ne...ne* splits between S1 and S2 initiality does not play an important role in the characteristics of *ne...ne* as an additive connective. The translation data received from the Kurdish translators also confirmed that *ne...ne* is best translated into English as *nor*, as chosen by 19 Kurdish translators out of 32. Also, both connectives exhibit similar characteristics and they both signal the simple additive relation.

### 4.2 Complex additive relation

The second type of the additive relations is the complex additive relation. The complex additive relations are referred to in Halliday and Hasan (1976) as "specifically EMPHATIC forms of the 'and' relation" which means "there is yet another point to be taken in connection with the previous one" (1976:246). Halliday and Hasan's (1976) term "emphatic" seems to be problematic, as even the simple additive connectives can combine textual segments with some degree of emphasis. In this sense, the complex additive relation would not be different from the simple additive relation. The nature of what is entailed in the creation of "emphasis" is not always made explicit. For example, Searle and Vanderveken (1985) referred to the complex additive relation as "a relation in which the cumulative nature of the propositions is emphasized" (1985: 4). In a more recent study, Loos et al (2003) defined the emphatic additive relation similarly as "an additive relation in which the cumulative nature of the propositions in the relation is emphasized" (Loos et al, 2003). Brinton (2001) stated that the connectives that have subjective functions "express evaluation or emphasis" (2001: 139). In terms of the relation between iconicity and complexity, Givón states that "all other things being equal, a coded experience is easier to store, retrieve, and communicate if the code is maximally isomorphic to the experience" (1985:189). Newmeyer's suggestion is inline with Givón's as he suggests that "marked forms and structures are typically both structurally more complex and semantically more complex than unmarked ones" (1992: 763). Moreover, according to Haspelmath "The formally derived or marked words are generally also semantically derived in that they have some additional meaning element that is lacking in the formally basic or unmarked word" (1993: 78). So, the iconicity of the complex additive relations suggests that the complex additive connectives outlined in this study need to be corresponding to the complex
additive relations. For example, connectives like *furthermore, in addition* signal a more complex additive relation than just *and*.

Together, these alternative definitions point to the cumulative and evaluative potential of complex relations, suggesting that ‘emphasis’ involves marking a subtly different stance in the complex additive relations that is not present in the simple additive relations alone. In order to tease out exactly how this emphasis between the segments is distributed, the examples of the connectives in this complex additive relation were analysed using translation and the principles of Relevance Theory.

The substitution test shows that there are distinct characteristics attributed to different additive connectives. In this regard, Lewis states that "distributional analysis and substitution tests of particular discourse marking expressions clearly reveal that they have conventional meanings that are part of our knowledge of our language" (Lewis, 2006: 47). For instance, co-occurrence of certain connectives like *and*+ *additionally, and*+ *furthermore, and*+ *also* indicate that in this lexical complexity there is more emphasis created by the combination of connectives than when compared to the occurrence of *and* alone between two segments. These co-occurrence patterns suggest that all of the complex additive connectives can be added to *and* in order to upgrade emphasis in the segment which contains them, while *as well as* does not accept the addition of *and* in English texts, as observed in the English opinion articles. This is also true in case of Kurdish additive connectives, especially *w*; in which *w* can co-occur with all other additive connectives like *herweha, s* and *hem...hem*. According to the data from the opinion articles, the co-occurrence of additive connectives involves a more complex sense to the addition process between the two combined segments. In this regard, Coll points out that "conjuncts can co-occur with conjunctions such as *and so, or else, etc*. The conjunct gives a more explicit orientation to the conjunction. Conjuncts can also co-occur with other conjuncts" (2009: 120). In addition to that, the co-occurrence between some connectives like *and*+ (*in addition, furthermore, moreover, also*) indicate that these complex connectives usually accompany the emphasised segment in the text. This is also the same case in Kurdish where *w*+ (*herweha, s, hem...hem*) indicate that the segment in which they occur is emphasised. The non-occurrence between *and* and *in addition to, besides* indicates that these two connectives accompany the segment in which the element of emphasis is downgraded, and the same case applies to the Kurdish connectives in which *w* does not co-occur with *cide le serbari* and *sereñai eweş.*
Relevance Theory's procedural account might draw a more distinctive line between the two sub-types of the additive relations, namely, simple and complex additive relations. The procedural accounts of the simple and complex connectives are different from each other because there are different constraints on the combined segments in each relation. That is, the procedure implemented by connectives when signalling the complex additive relation is that S2 is added information to S1 with emphasis on the point mentioned in S2, i.e., the relation is "emphatic" (Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 245), whereas in case of the simple additive relations there is no restriction on the segments to stress or emphasise any of the combined segments. The procedural account implemented in the complex additive relations is that there is constraint of emphasis on the segment in which the complex additive connective occurs. As the following discussion will show, this constraint of emphasis can operate in different ways, in some cases working to increase the emphasis on the clause in which the connective occurs, whilst in others the effect can be to decrease emphasis (and so by default increase the focus elsewhere). The connectives that signal the complex additive relation in English include further, besides, in addition, and also and in Kurdish they are serbari, sereřai (eweş), cīge le, and hem...hem.

### 4.2.1 Additive

The complex additive relation is different from the simple additive relation in that the former involves emphatic forms of "the 'and' relation" in the sense that "there is yet another point to be taken in conjunction with the previous one" (Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 246). According to the Hallidayan framework, the notion "complex" refers to the "additionalness" of S2 in the text (Ibid: 247). The term "additionalness" could be less subjective compared to the "emphatic forms of the and-relation". Relevance Theory can be used to clarify the notion of emphatic in the complex additive relations in which this type of relation has a restricted general procedural account that S1 is information and S1 is additional information, with specific emphasis on one of the segments (depending on the connective used). As mentioned earlier, there are connectives that accompany the emphasised segment such as furthermore, in addition, also, sereřai eweş, hem...hem, ş and others that accompany the non- emphasised segment like besides, in addition to, cīge le, serbari. Connectives that implement such types of procedure include further, furthermore, also, besides, and in addition in English and the Kurdish connectives include serbari eweş, sereřai eweş, cīge le, and hem... hem.
**furthermore**

According to Halliday and Hasan the additive connective *furthermore* has the sense of "there is yet another element or proposition to be added" (1976: 248). This connective usually accompanies the emphasised segment in the text, and it can co-occur with *and*. The procedural account implemented in example 15a is that $S_1$ is a statement $S_2$ is the emphasised statement. Therefore, the additive relation signalled by *furthermore* is more complex than the one signalled by the *and*-relation.

$S_1$ *and furthermore* $S_2$

15a) The solicitor for the children’s guardian alleged that Mr Kirk was secretly recording the proceedings and *furthermore* that he was not Mr Kirk but Mr Randall-Joliffe, who had already been excluded from the court when she was present.\(^{20}\)

The use of *furthermore* in example 15 does not only inform the reader that there is added information in $S_2$, but it also gives the impression that $S_1$ is not the whole truth; there is another piece of information that the reader should know, and that it is more important. The procedure implemented by *furthermore* in example 15 is that $S_2$ presents new information with emphasis on the second segment rather than on $S_1$. A substitution test between *furthermore* in place of *and furthermore* indicates that the emphasis on $S_2$ is not affected, as in example 15b.

$S_1$ *furthermore* $S_2$

15b) The solicitor for the children’s guardian alleged that Mr Kirk was secretly recording the proceedings *furthermore* that he was not Mr Kirk but Mr Randall-Joliffe, who had already been excluded from the court when she was present.\(^{21}\)

However, the replacement of *and furthermore* by *and* would reduce the degree of emphasis on $S_2$, as in example 15c.


15c) The solicitor for the children’s guardian alleged that Mr Kirk was secretly recording the proceedings and that he was not Mr Kirk but Mr Randall-Joliffe, who had already been excluded from the court when she was present.\textsuperscript{22}

The translation data in the current study showed that the most suitable equivalence for \textit{furthermore} in Kurdish is \textit{sere\text{"{e}}ai ewe\text{"{e}}}\. Twenty-seven out of 32 translators chose \textit{sere\text{"{e}}ai ewe\text{"{e}}} as the translation for \textit{furthermore}.

\textit{sere\text{"{e}}ai ewe\text{"{e}} (furthermore)}

The Kurdish connective \textit{sere\text{"{e}}ai ewe\text{"{e}}} has not been studied in the literature on Kurdish language so far. The responses received from the Kurdish translators in the current study suggested that \textit{sere\text{"{e}}ai ewe\text{"{e}}} is the best equivalence for \textit{furthermore}, as chosen by 27 out 32 translators, and hypothetically it should signal the complex additive relation. This hypothesis was confirmed by the data from the Kurdish opinion articles that \textit{sere\text{"{e}}ai ewe\text{"{e}}} implements the procedural account of the complex additive relation as well as the existence of \textipa{\text{"{e}}} within the connective, which is described as the emphatic marker in Kurdish (Kurdish Academia, 2009). The procedure in which \textit{sere\text{"{e}}ai ewe\text{"{e}}} operates is that S2 is the emphasis added to the information mentioned in S1, as in example 16.

16) Yekek le i\text{"{e}}sekani opozisyon aweye ke xelk le\text{"{e}}z\text{"{e}} desti h\text{"{i}}zb w h\text{"{u}}k\text{"{u}}met derb\text{"{e}}n\text{"{e}}t. \textit{Sere\text{"{e}}ai ewe\text{"{e}}} hewlbdat yasai g\text{"{u}}ncaw bo kerti taibet w yasai karkirdin p\text{"{e}}\text{"{s}}ke\text{"{e}} bkat.\textsuperscript{23}

\textit{One-INDF-ART ofPREP work-DEF-ART-POSS opposition this-beV that people underPREP hand party and government out–bring-3AGR. more to this–also try –doing-3AGR law-POSS suitable for sector private and law-POSS labour present doing.}

One of the duties of the opposition is to drag the people away from the political party and the government. \textit{Furthermore}, it should try to lay down suitable laws for private sector and labour.

\textsuperscript{22} Booker 17/09/2011, \url{http://www.telegraph.co.uk/comment/columnists/christopherbooker/8771232/Couple-denied-legal-help-while-lawyers-make-1m-removing-their-children.html}
\textsuperscript{23} Qami’, K. 20/05/2011, \url{http://www.sbeiy.com/ku/article_detail.aspx?ArticleID=5009}
Based on the general procedure in which *sereñai eweñ* and *furthermore* operate, both of the connectives signal the complex additive relation. The substitution test suggests that *sereñai eweñ* cannot be substituted by *w* in Kurdish texts. Although it was hypothesised that as a complex additive connective *sereñai eweñ* should be able to co-occur with *w*, the Kurdish opinion articles suggested that they do not co-occur in Kurdish texts.

**in addition**

The English connective *in addition* is characterized by occurring in different textual combinations, such as *in addition and in addition to that*. These different combinations do not affect the type of the relation signalled by *in addition*, which is the complex additive relation. However, the weight of emphasis conferred by the connectives *in addition and in addition to* would change from S1 to S2 or vice versa depending on the choice of the connectives, because the segment in which *in addition* occurs upgrades emphasis, whereas the segment containing *in addition to* downgrades emphasis and adds emphasis to the other segment. The procedure implemented by *in addition* in English texts is usually that S1 is a piece of information and S2 is added emphasis on that information, as in example 17.

S1. *In addition S2*

17) Wisely asserted that no shadow Cabinet member can make additional spending pledges in the current febrile context. **In addition**, Mr Balls' revealing hint that he is contemplating the introduction of a mansion tax was to provide extra funding for the NHS and also for skills training.²⁴

In order to consider *in addition* as a connective, it has to occupy the initial position of S2. If that is the case then it has a textual function in contributing to the cohesion of the text. Otherwise, it will only have a structural function in combining the grammatical constituents of a single sentence. The connective *in addition* is the most explicit connective to signal additive relation, as it contains the word *addition*. This explicitation can be regarded as an element of emphasis that is attributed to *in addition*. The substitution test in example 17a suggests that *in addition* (in the initial position of S2) can be substituted by *and*, but by using the simple connective, the element of emphasis would be lost or degraded to a lower degree.

²⁴ Editorial, 06/09/2012, [http://www.independent.co.uk/voices/editorials/leading-article-balls-big-idea-is-a-decent-first-step-8106815.html](http://www.independent.co.uk/voices/editorials/leading-article-balls-big-idea-is-a-decent-first-step-8106815.html)
17a) Wisely asserted that no shadow Cabinet member can make additional spending pledges in the current febrile context. *And, Mr Balls' revealing hint that he is contemplating the introduction of a mansion tax was to provide extra funding for the NHS and also for skills training.*

However, when *in addition* occurs in the initial position of S1, it is usually in the form *in addition to.* Both forms *in addition* and *in addition to* signal the complex addition relation, but *in addition* usually occurs with the segment in which emphasis is upgraded and *in addition to* occurs with the segment in which emphasis is downgraded. For example, consider the substitution test in examples 17b and 17c.

17b) Wisely asserted that no shadow Cabinet member can make additional spending pledges in the current febrile context. *In addition to Mr Balls' revealing hint that he is contemplating the introduction of a mansion tax was to provide extra funding for the NHS and also for skills training.*

17c) *In addition to* Mr Balls' revealing hint that he is contemplating the introduction of a mansion tax was to provide extra funding for the NHS and also for skills training. Wisely asserted that no shadow Cabinet member can make additional spending pledges in the current febrile context.

Examples 17b and 17c show that the occurrence of *in addition* is restricted to initial position of S2 and the occurrence of *in addition to* is restricted to initial position of S1. The difference between *in addition* and *in addition to* is also confirmed in the translation data, in which *serbari* was translated into *in addition to* in the initial position of S1 and *serbari ewe* was translated into English as *in addition* in the initial position of S2. The responses received from the translators in the current study suggested that the most suitable equivalence for *in addition* in Kurdish is *serbari ewe,* as chosen by 27 translators out of 32.

---


26 Editorial, 06/09/2012, [http://www.independent.co.uk/voices/editorials/leading-article-balls-big-idea-is-a-decent-first-step-8106815.html](http://www.independent.co.uk/voices/editorials/leading-article-balls-big-idea-is-a-decent-first-step-8106815.html)

27 Editorial, 06/09/2012, [http://www.independent.co.uk/voices/editorials/leading-article-balls-big-idea-is-a-decent-first-step-8106815.html](http://www.independent.co.uk/voices/editorials/leading-article-balls-big-idea-is-a-decent-first-step-8106815.html)
**serbari (ewe) (in addition to, besides)**

Serbari (ewe) is not mentioned in the existing Kurdish research on connectives. The reason why it is included in the list of additive connectives in the current study is because it can have a textual function to link two textual segments together and signal the complex additive relation, as shown in the Kurdish data. Moreover, the responses received from the Kurdish translators suggested that the most suitable equivalence for *serbari ewe* is *in addition to*, thus it should be able to signal the complex additive relation, as shown in example 18.

*Serbari ewe S1, S2*

18) **Serbari ewe** kêşaney Ḟikûmeti herêm legel Baḵda heyetî w ew kêše najêgirei ſûbeřû kompanya nêwdewlétyekani newt debêtewê le bakûr, newt w gasî Kurdistan hêšta zor layen boxoi ſadekêşêt.\(^{28}\)

Adding to *CONJ these problemsPOSS governmentPOSS region with Baghdad havePST and thisDEM atmosphere non-stable –be facing company international-DEF-ART oil being inPREP north, oil and gasPOSS Kurdistan still many people foR –itself grab –be3AGR.*

**In addition to (Besides)** the problems that the regional government has with Baghdad and the unstable situation that challenges the international oil companies in the north, Kurdistan oil and gas are still attracting many companies to come.

The translation data in example 18 shows that *serbari* can be translated into English as both *in addition to* and *besides*, as chosen by 18 out of 32 translators. The substitution test in example 18 also suggests that both *in addition* and *besides* can be used as translations for *serbari*. However, when *serbari* occurs in the initial position of S2, it cannot be substituted by *in addition to*, as in example 19. Thus, *serbari* in the initial position of S2 is translated into English as *besides*, as chosen by 20 out of 32 translators.

---

Queue-my1AGR hold-was to on-be-halfPOSS children-my-too some water receive-1AGR. Besides that several times on queue-for-water beat-they-1AGR.

I was queuing to get some water. **Besides** I was getting beaten up many times.

The procedure in which **serbari** operates is that S1 is a piece of information and S2 is the emphasised information. Therefore, the relation signalled by **serbari** is the complex additive relation. As far as its position in the text is concerned, **serbari** is almost identical to *in addition* in that they both can occur flexibly in the text; whether initial position of S1 or S2, whereas **serbari eweş** only occurred in the initial position of S2 and not S1, as observed in the data from Kurdish opinion articles.

**besides**

The English connective **besides** is used as a connective to signal an additive relation which is more complex than the one of the "and relation" (Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 245). One of the characteristics of **besides** is that it usually accompanies the segment in which emphasis is downgraded and thus the other segment would be the focus of increased emphasis.

20) The sentencing of the "Chester Facebook Two", **besides** being the longest handed down so far, sets an extremely worrying precedent for curbs on freedom of speech during civil unrest.30

The use of **besides** in example 20 illustrates the relative nature of the emphasis implied by **besides**, where the more important outcome of "the sentencing of the 'Chester Facebook Two' " is the "extremely worrying precedent", rather than the length of the sentence (prefaced by **besides**). So, the type of relation signalled by **besides** is not just a simple additive relation, but it has a more complicated role behind its textual function. That is the procedure implemented by **besides**, when used in the initial position of S1, is that S1 is a

---


piece of information and S2 is the emphasised information. As far as position is concerned, *besides* seems to be quite flexible. The segment containing *besides* is flexible enough to be used in either positions S1 or S2. For instance, re-writing the text in example 20 above in the order presented in example 20a does not affect the type of relation signalled by the connective *besides*, but the shift of the position of the connective would affect the message conveyed by the text, as the connective *besides* accompanies the less emphasized segment and in this case the position of the emphasis would change from S2 to S1.

20a) The sentencing of the "Chester Facebook Two" sets an extremely worrying precedent for curbs on freedom of speech during civil unrest. *Besides (And)* it is the longest handed down so far.\[^{31}\]

The relation being signalled in both examples 20a is the complex additive relation. The procedure implemented by *besides* in example 20a still complies with the general procedural account of the complex additive relations, in which one of the segments must be emphasised. Also, the substitution test shows that replacing *besides* by *and* would affect the element of emphasis and change the relation from complex to simple additive relation. However, the occurrence of *besides* in the initial position of S1 prevents its substitution with *and*, because *and* does not occur in the initial position of S1 in English texts, at least as observed from the opinion articles, as illustrated in example 20b.

20b) The sentencing of the "Chester Facebook Two", *and* being the longest handed down so far, sets an extremely worrying precedent for curbs on freedom of speech during civil unrest.\[^{32}\]

The responses received from the Kurdish translators in the current study suggested that the most suitable equivalence for *besides* in Kurdish is *cige le*, as chosen by 23 out of 32 translators.

*cige le* (*besides*)

*Cige le* is one of the conjunctions used in Kurdish texts to convey the complex additive relation between two or more parts of a text. As a connective it must be in the initial position of the segment, be it S1 or S2, in order to have a textual function. Otherwise, *cige le* would only have a structural function in the sentence. According to Shwani (2003: 39) this connective has another form in Kurdish texts which is *becige le*. However, the Kurdish data from opinion articles showed that there is no difference between them in terms of syntactic function and signalling a semantic relation. *Bècige le* is not included in the current study, because it normally occurs "in spoken language and not in written genres" (Kurdish Academia, 2011: 321). Nevertheless, the translation data in the current study suggested that the most suitable equivalence for *cige le* in English is *besides*. Therefore, *cige le* signals the complex additive relation as shown in examples 21a and 22a.

*Cige le* S1, S2

21a) *Cige le* ţawnan w paktawkrdnî řezêî w koçpêkrdnî daniştûani Kurd lew nawçane, snûri kargêřî ew nawçanesûyan gořîwe.

_Besides of_ chasing and _clean-doing_ races and _deporting_ residents _POSS_ Kurd _in_ these _areas_ , _border administrative_ _POSS_ these _areas-_too-3P-AGR change-3P-AGR-have-done.

_Besides_ chasing, discriminating against and deporting Kurdish residents in these areas, they have also changed the administrative borderlines.

The Kurdish connective *cige le* is similar to *besides* in that it cannot be substituted by simple additive connectives like *w* and *herweha* when occurring in the initial position of S1, as shown in example 20b.

21b) *W* ţawnan w paktawkrdnî řezêî w koçpêkrdnî daniştwani Kûrd lew nawçane, snûri kargêřî ew nawçanesûyan gořîwe.

---

Besides of chasing and clean-doing races and deporting residents Kurd in these areas, border administrative these areas-too have done.

*And chasing, discriminating and deporting Kurdish residents in these areas, they have also changed the administrative borderlines.

When ciğe le is used in the initial position of S2, as in example 22a, it can be substituted by w and herweha, but the weight of emphasis on S2 would be affected and the emphasis would be lost, as in example 22b

S1, ciğe le S2

22a) Enjumeneke serbexo nîe le enjamdani přožekan, ciğe lewe ciğe lewe natwanêt přožei hawkarî xêzani w damezrandnî genjan bxatefû.  

Council-DEF ART free not-is in implement projects-DEF ART, besides not-able-3SP-AGR is projects-POSS help family and employment youths present-3SP-AGR.

The Council is not independent in executing the projects. Besides, they cannot suggest projects such as social aid and employment of youths.

22b) Enjumeneke serbexo nîe le enjamdani přožekan, w natwanêt přožei hawkarî xêzani w damezrandnî genjan bxatefû.  

Council-DEF ART free not-is in implement projects-DEF ART, besides not-able-3SP-AGR is projects-POSS help family and employment youths present-3SP-AGR.

The Council is not independent in executing the projects. And they cannot suggest projects such as social aid and employment of youths.

In example 22a \textit{cige le} signals the complex additive relation by showing that there is yet another topic (S2) to follow in the text, and that the emphasis is on S2, \textit{cige le} only accompanies the less emphasised segment in the text and thus the other segment would be emphasised. That is, \textit{cige le} downgrades emphasis in the segment in which it occurs and thus increases emphasis in the other segment. The Kurdish connectives \textit{cige le} can also be used with demonstrative such as \textit{eme} (this) and \textit{ewe} (that) in Kurdish texts.

\textit{cige le ewe/eme (apart from this/that)}

When the Kurdish connective \textit{cige le} is accompanied by one of these demonstratives (\textit{eme, ewe}) \textit{(this, that)}, it usually occupies the initial position of S1 and the syntactic pattern of S1 is different from the one of the S1 where \textit{cige le} is used without these demonstratives. In this case, \textit{cige le} is translated into English as \textit{apart from}. The Kurdish Academia suggests that the use of these demonstratives does not affect the relation signalled by \textit{cige le} (2011: 322). Thus, the form of the text would be \textit{cige le} S1, S2, as in example 23.

\textit{Cige lewe} S1, S2

\begin{ex}
\textbf{23) Cige lew} qatey lebery krdûe, qatêki tê yedekissî le piştewe lenaw otombêlakey helwasîwe! \textsuperscript{37}

\textit{Apart from suit-DEF-ART wear done-3SP-AGR has, suit another spare-too in back inside car-3SP-AGR hang-done-S3P-AGR!}

\textit{Apart from} the suit he is wearing, he has hung another one behind him in the car!
\end{ex}

\textit{also}

The low frequency of \textit{also} (0.06\%) in comparison to the high frequency of \textit{and} (0.76\%) in the data from the English opinion articles shows that \textit{also} is not as widely used as \textit{and}. However, it plays an important role in signalling the complex additive relation in English

\textsuperscript{37} Shareef, 12/06/2012, \texttt{http://www.sbeiy.com/article_detail.aspx?ArticleID=5884&AuthorID=891}
texts. The connective also instructs the reader to find a "parallel with some previous proposition or assumption" (Levinsohn, 2012: 87). In this instance, the reader finds a parallel in earlier statements and this makes also fulfil a textual function above the clausal level and connect the two independent segments of a text. Nevertheless, this is more complicated than a simple additive relation. There is a sense of emphasis to be associated with the segment accompanying also, because also like in addition conveys the notion of "additionalness" in the segment where they occur (Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 247). Thus, the procedure in which also operates is usually S1 information or statement and S2 an emphasised piece of information or statement, as illustrated in examples 24 and 25.

S1. Also S2

24) Miliband's assessment of the situation chimes with the opinion of senior Pakistani officials who feel the imminent end of the international military campaign in Afghanistan looks likely to be replaced by little political process, with few indications as to who Pakistani officials should engage with. Also, it echoes the feeling inside Whitehall that US policy in Afghanistan is overly dominated by the military under General David Petraeus.38

S1, also S2

25) Politics involves negotiation. In the US system, with all its checks and balances, a refusal to negotiate amounts to an inability to participate. It means you can pretty much stop anything; it also means you can get almost nothing done.39

In examples 24 and 25, also signals the complex additive relation. Substitution of also by and in these two examples would affect the element of emphasis, i.e., the emphasis would be lost or degraded. Another characteristic of also is its co-occurrence with and which could also indicate that also is a complex additive connective, as in example 26.

38 Stratton and Tisdall 13/04/2011 http://www.guardian.co.uk/politics/2011/apr/12/david-miliband-critical-us-afghanistan
S1 and also S2

26) It looks like Purnell wants to embrace Beveridge, repudiate him and also turn the clock back to the pre-Beveridge welfare era all at once. 40

The connective also is different from and in that it has a more limited range of multi-functionality. When also co-occurs with other connectives it usually takes the second position in the sequence, while and could be combined with several different types of connectives and signal different relations and when and co-occurs with other connectives, it takes the first position in the sequence. As far as the position of also in the text is concerned, it is usually found in the initial position of S2, as presented in examples 24 and 25 above. This is the only case in which also is considered as a connective. In other positions, also is not a connective, but it is a constituent of the clause or sentence, i.e. it functions as a conjunction only in other positions in the text. The responses received from the translators showed that also can be translated into Kurdish as herweha, ş and hem, as suggested by 18 out of 32 translators.

 ş (also)

According to Shwani (2003: 81), ş is one of the additive conjunctions in Kurdish texts, as it could have different functions depending on its context in discourse. The main characteristic of ş is that it never occurs independently in a sentence, but it can be linked to different syntactic constituents of a sentence, such as subject, verb and objects. Another characteristic of ş which makes it irregular if compared to other connectives is that it can co-occur with numerous Kurdish connectives, usually to increase "emphasis and inclusion" (Kurdish Academia, 2009: 171). This, in turn, increases its multi-functionality as an additive connective. It is never found in sentence-initial positions in Kurdish texts. Rather, it occurs in the middle of sentences as it is always used as a suffix. The Kurdish additive connective ş can have both a structural and a textual function in Kurdish texts. However, as a connective (signalling a semantic relation), it is not very frequently used (0.17%). The procedure in which ş operates is that S1 is constrained to information or a point and S2 is restricted to an emphasis of that information or point, as shown in example 27. Also, ş can be substituted by w in example 27, but the emphasis on S2 would be lost and the relation

between the segments would be a simple additive relation rather than a complex additive relation.

27) Dengdan le mafe here seretaîyekani mrove, le destûri herêmi Kurdistanî ş amaţei pêkrawe.41

Voting from PREP right very beginning-POSS human being, in constitution-POSS Kurdistan and indicated–S3P-AGR-has-been.

Voting is one of the primitive human rights. Also, it is indicated in the Kurdistan Constitution.

The connection between the two sentences in example 27 is signalled by ş, which is a complex additive relation. According to Kurdish Academia (2009) ş is used "to add emphasis in Kurdish language" (2009: 137). Thus, the use of ş in S2 emphasizes the importance of "voting" because it is mentioned in "Kurdistan Constitution". In order to function as a connective above the clausal level, it should signal an additive relation between two clauses, in which case it is linked to a noun. In this case, the translation data suggest that it is translated into English as and, as chosen by 17 translators out of 32. As a connective, it usually occurs in Kurdish texts as S1, Sş2 (linked to the head noun in the subject of S2).

Shwani classifies the Kurdish "Amrazi Lêkder" conjunction particle ş within the group of linguistic items that are used to "conjoin two constituents in a sentence" (2003: 81). According to Shwani (2003: 81-82), ş can be used as an infix and as a suffix linked to pronouns, nouns and fused in verb phrases, as in the following examples, which are not numbered here, because they do not fit into the description of text, i.e., they are comprised of one single segment.

ş = too <noun/pronoun+ ş + verb>

Alaşm bini.

Ala-too-I saw.

I saw Ala too.

The analysis conducted by Shwani (2003) does not clearly inform us about the functional status of the connective ş. His study is based on the syntactic and morphological status of Kurdish conjunctions. In addition, Shwani's examples are not considered as complete texts, because the other text segment to which these parts are supposed to be related are not shown. Thus, the word ş does not signal a specific semantic relation in those examples, since there must be at least two independent segments in order to show the relation between them. In this regard, Hoey states that "a clause relation is the cognitive process whereby we interpret the meaning of a sentence or group of sentences in the light of its adjoining sentences or group sentences" (1991: 16). In the examples given by Shwani (2003), ş is used as a conjunction that combines different constituents of a single sentence (single message), whereas in example 27, ş is considered as a connective which signals the additive relation between two parts of a text and emphasizes the importance of a message in S2. The translation data in the current study suggested that there are other synonyms of ş in Kurdish as hem...hem.
hem … hem (and also)

Hem …hem is usually referred to as "Amrazi Bestin" (conjunctive particle) in Kurdish (Kurdish Academy, 2011: 137). This connective is considered as one conjunction despite the fact that it is formed from two identical words hem and hem. As far as its position in the text is concerned, Shwani states that hem...hem are always "split between two words, phrases or clauses [...] if the subjects and the verbs in the two connected clauses are identical, they will be repeated" (2003: 91). Nevertheless, based on his example, this claim fails to take into account the two different, independent clauses in the sentence. For instance, consider Shwani's (2003: 92) example bellow.

**Hem** Zerdast nani xward hem Didar.

and Zerdest bread-3SP-AGR ate also Didar.

Zardast **and also** Didar had a meal.

According to Shwani's text above, it is evident in the translation that both segments could be rendered as one simple sentence as (They had a meal). In this case, it is not possible to claim that hem...hem is a connective, as there is one single segment in the text. Rather, it is a conjunction that has only a syntactic function: to combine two words and form a single constituent in the sentence. In order to have a textual function in the text, hem...hem must signal a semantic relation between two clauses and when it does so, will usually signal an additive relation. On these occasions, it does not only signal an additive relation, but it also implies "emphasis on the relation between the two clauses" (Kurdish Academia, 2011: 203). In case of extra emphasis on a topic, it is also possible for the connectives hem...hem and w to coexist, as in example 28. This is an indication that hem...hem signals the complex additive relation as it can be added to w and that substituting hem...hem with w would affect the emphasis on S2, i.e. the emphasis would be lost.

S1 hem, S2 hem

28) Nechirwan Barzani hem welami opozisyoni dayewe w hemi xıstye berdem welami yekxistnewei nawmali Kurdi.42

---

42 Margayee, 07/03/2012, [http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=13807&z=4&l=1](http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=13807&z=4&l=1)
Nechirwan Barzani and answer-POSS opposition gave-3SP-AGR and also threw-S3P-AGR infront answer-POSS unification-POSS home-POSS Kurdish.

Nechiwan Barzani addressed the opposition party concerns *and also* held them responsible for losing the unity of Kurdish voices.

The most significant characteristics of *hem...hem* is that it is split between two clauses and it could be placed after the Subject, or within the predicates of both clauses. However, when it is translated into English, the position is always between the two combined clauses, as in example 26, because the combination of *and* and *also* must not be set apart by any other element in English. On the contrary, according to Kurdish Academia's conventions this type of combination of connectives in Kurdish, such as *hem...hem* "must be associated with different segments in the text" (2011: 204).

### 4.2.2 Alternative

According to Halliday and Hasan, the complex alternative relation is signalled by the connective "*alternatively*", as they state that "the form *alternatively* is perhaps an emphatic variant of the *or*-relation, whereby the speaker stresses the alternativeness" in S2 (Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 247). Based on the Hallidayan framework, since there is only one connective signalling the complex alternative relation, there is less subjectivity involved in this type of relation. The general procedural account of this type of relation would be S2 is an alternative to S1, with emphasis on S2. The connective that signals this type of relation in English is *alternatively* and in Kurdish it is *yaniş*.

*alternatively*

The data from the English opinion articles showed that the only English connective to signal the complex alternative additive relation in English texts is *alternatively*. The procedure implemented by *alternatively* is S2 is the stressed alternative of S1, as in example 29.

S1. *Alternatively* S2
29) His appointment may herald a softening of policy. *Alternatively*, perhaps Mr Cameron just thinks he can do a better job than Mr Lansley at selling it to the voters. 43

The responses received from the Kurdish translators in the current study suggested that the most suitable equivalent for *alternatively* in Kurdish is *yaniş*, as chosen by all the 32 translators.

*yaniş*

The Kurdish additive connective *yaniş* has not been mentioned as a connective in the Kurdish literature so far. The results of the translation data and the data from Kurdish opinion articles showed that *yaniş* implements the general procedure of the complex alternative additive relation in which S2 is an emphasized alternative to S1, as shown in example 30.

S1? *Yaniş* S2?

30) Aya derbîni nařezaî nařewaye? *Yaniş* mebest ewe bû ke bemêzda kêşaneke nařewaye?

Is expressing-POSS disagreement not-right-S3P-AGR-is? *Alternatively*, meaning thisDEM was that with-table tapping-DEF-ART not-right-3SP-AGR-is?

Is expressing disagreements not allowed? *Alternatively*, was it meant that tapping the tables is not allowed? 44

The reason why the alternative relation in example 30 is considered complex, is that the connective *yaniş* comprises of two words *yan* and ş. In a study on Kurdish coordinating conjunctions, Shwani pointed out that ş is used "to add the sense of emphasis in Kurdish sentences" (Shwani, 2003: 79). Consequently, the use of ş (element of emphasis) in combination with *yan* (typical Kurdish connectives to signal alternative relation) indicates that *yaniş* signals the complex alternative additive relation in Kurdish texts.

43 Editorial, 05/09/2012, [http://www.independent.co.uk/voices/editorials/leading-article-a-reshuffle-tilted-towards-theory-right-8104899.html](http://www.independent.co.uk/voices/editorials/leading-article-a-reshuffle-tilted-towards-theory-right-8104899.html)
4.3 Appositional additive relation

Halliday and Hasan pointed out that apposition is a relation of "exposition or exemplification" and that it does not "correspond to coordination" (1976: 248). This means that apposition is not attributed to grammatical relations between two constituents of a single sentence, i.e., a single segment of a text. Halliday and Hasan (1976) did not give further details or definitions to flesh out the characteristics of the connectives which signal the appositional additive relation. Meyer stated that "apposition is a relation in which the second unit of the apposition either wholly or partially provides new information about the first unit" (1992: 92). However, Meyer's definition involves some degree of subjectivity, as "new information" in S2 could be emphasised or not. In terms of Relevance Theory, subjectivity is less prevalent in the appositional additive relations, because the procedures are restricted to the notion of "exemplification" without any interest in emphasis on any of the segments. Relevance Theory's procedural account was applied in the current study so as to provide further explication for this type of relation. The data from the opinion articles showed that the connectives used to signal the appositional additive relation usually present a general-specific relation between the types of information given in S1 and S2. In other words, the procedural account of the appositional connectives is that S1 is defined, modified or exemplified by S2. In the Hallidayan framework, the appositional additive relation is divided into two subtypes, namely "exposition and exemplification" (Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 248).

4.3.1 Expository

The expository type of the appositional additive relation is meant to "expose" S1 by presenting an explanation or definition in S2 (Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 248). The procedural account implemented in this type of relation is that S1 is explained or defined by S2, without specific emphasis on the "additionalness" of S2 (Ibid: 245). The connectives that implement this procedure in English include in other words, that is and I mean, and the corresponding Kurdish connectives are be watayeki tir, bew manaye and wate.
**in other words**

The main characteristic of the English connective *in other words* is that it only occurs in the initial position of S2 and never in the initial position of S1. Also, the procedures in which *in other words* operates is either S1 is modified in S2 as in example 29 or S1 is explained in S2 as in example 31.

S1. *In other words* S2

31) The exact phrasing of Clegg’s tough talk on the top rate of tax: "There is no way that the 50p [rate] is unilaterally going to be dropped in the absence of progress on lowering tax on people on low and middle incomes. We are not there to rush to the aid of the top 1 per cent of very very rich people who are not in straitened circumstances." *In other words*, no ditching of the top rate without action to help the less affluent.\(^ {45}\)

S1 (PARAGRAPH). *In other words* S2:

32) …it is a mistake to think that these projects always need to be funded by the taxpayer. There are plenty of investors and wealth funds around the world who can see the potential long-term revenue streams that can be generated by investing in a significant and beneficial piece of infrastructure.

*In other words*, it is largely a question of vision, and of political will…\(^ {46}\)

In example 31, the writer modifies a quote mentioned in S1 with a statement in S2, to expose the true message behind the quote. This explanation corresponds to the general procedure implemented by the additive connective *in other words*. Similarly, the procedure implemented in example 32 is that S1 is paraphrased by a statement in S2. Therefore, the relation signalled in examples 31 and 32 is the appositional additive relation. The translation data in the current study suggested that the most suitable equivalence for *in other words* in Kurdish is *be watayeki tr*, as suggested by 30 out of the 32 Kurdish translators.


**be watayeki tır (in other words)**

The Kurdish additive connective *be watayeki tır* has not been examined in Kurdish studies so far. However, the translation data received from the Kurdish translators in the current study suggested that *be watayeki tır* is best translated into English and *in other words*. Thus, it can be said that *be watayeki tır* signals the appositional additive relation. The Kurdish data from the opinion articles also confirmed that *be watayeki tır* implements the general procedure of the appositional additive relation, as in example 33.

S1. *Be watayeki tır* S2

33) Herweha waziri bargiri Amarika banghesti saroky Kurdestani kird bo koşki sipi ta grıftugoi keshakani Êraq bken. *Ba watayeki tır* Amarika mtmanei tewawî ba sarok Barzani heye ke wek karekterêki bahêz datwanê roî bîgêrêt le meseley asteway netewey.47

In addition, the American defense minister invited the president of Kurdistan to the White House in order to discuss the current issues in Iraq. *In other words*, America has complete trust in President Barzani to play a positive role in the national reconciliation process.

The procedure in which *be watayeki tır* operates in example 33 is that S1 is exposed/paraphrased by the statement in S2. Therefore, the relation being signalled in example 33 is the appositional additive relation.

**that is**

The data from the English opinion articles showed that the additive relation signalled by *that is* is similar to the one signalled by *in other words* in that it conveys the notion of

---

clarification or explanation. The procedure in which *that is* operates is usually S1 is paraphrased/ explained by S2, as in example 34.

34) The technique for surviving an encounter with the hairy mammals who inhabit Alaska’s wilderness is broadly similar to one you might try after, say, spilling a pint of premium lager on someone with a visible tattoo. *That is*, keep calm, act humbly, and try to avoid inflaming the situation.\(^{48}\)

The procedural account of *that is* in example 34 suggests that the relation between S1 and S2 is the appositional additive relation, because S1 is clarified by S2. Translation data suggested that the most suitable equivalence for *that is* in Kurdish is *bew manaye*, which was chosen by 29 Kurdish translators out of 32.

*bew manaye (that is)*

The phrase *bew manaye* has never been mentioned in Kurdish research so far. However, I implemented the translation technique of paradigm of correspondences (as outlined in Table 5), depending upon translation data received from the Kurdish translators in order to find out its equivalence in English, namely *that is*. Therefore, *bew manaye* could signal the appositional additive relation as illustrated in example 35.

35) Partî Dimukrati Kurdistan lawani wek pêşengi xebati netewayeti nasandwe. *Bew manayei*, herdw rekkrawi yeketi qutabyan w lawani dimukrati Kurdestani damazrand.\(^{49}\)

*Party Democratic-POSS Kurdistan youths-3AGR like leading-POSS struggle-POSS national introduce-did-3SP-AGR.* With meaning, *both organization-of Union-POSS Students and Youths--POSS Democratic-POSS Kurdistan established-3SP-AGR.*

The Kurdistan Democratic Party introduced the youth as the leaders of national revolution. *That is*, KDP established both of the organizations, the Kurdistan Students Union and Kurdistan Democratic Youths.

The procedure in which *bew manaye* operates in example 35 is that S1 is clarified by S2. Also, the characteristics of *bew manaye* as an additive connective were confirmed by the translation data in the current study to be the most suitable equivalence for English *that is*. The responses from the Kurdish translators showed that 18 out of 32 translators chose *that is* as the equivalent for *bew manaye*. This is an indication that *bew manaye* signals the appositional additive relation through exposition, because *that is* is an expository connective. In addition, the data from the Kurdish opinion articles suggested that the procedural account of *bew manaye* is in line with the general procedure of the expository appositional relation.

**I mean**

It is rather rare to find interpersonal connectives in written texts in English. However, English opinion articles showed that interpersonal connectives can be used in opinion articles as they form part of the cohesive links between the segments of a text. A recent study by Jauro et al. (2012: 45) revealed that "journalists should be taught the art of effective use of discourse markers in news packaging and delivering for clarity in news reporting or writing". The data from the opinion articles in the current study also showed that *I mean* is used to signal the appositional additive relation, because the procedure in which this connective operates is that S1 is further explained by S2, as in example 36.

36) The scope of the deal should probably concern the Tea Partyers more than the left, because there isn't much meaningful in this deal that I can see. *I mean* cuts and savings that have to take effect by the general election in November 2012.\(^{50}\)

The procedure implemented by *I mean* in example 36 is in line with the general procedural account of the appositional additive relation. The translation data received from the Kurdish translators suggested that the most suitable equivalence for *I mean* in Kurdish is *wate*, as chosen by all of the 32 translators.

**wate (I mean)**

---

\(^{50}\) Adams, R. 01/08/2011, [http://www.guardian.co.uk/world/richard-adams-blog/2011/aug/01/debt-crisis-deal-obama-republicans](http://www.guardian.co.uk/world/richard-adams-blog/2011/aug/01/debt-crisis-deal-obama-republicans)
The Kurdish additive connective *wate* has not been mentioned in Kurdish research so far. However, the translation data in the current study and the data from the Kurdish opinion articles suggested that *wate* is an additive connective that signals the appositional additive relation. In order to be considered a connective, *wate* needs to occur in the initial position of S2, otherwise it will not serve a textual function of signalling semantic relations between two segments of a text. The characteristics of *wate* is very similar to *I mean*, because they both implement the same procedure in which S1 is exposed by an explanation in S2, as in example 37.

37) Bři ew parey ke hikumet le tendrusti her takeki komelgeda mesrefi dekat, pewereki gringi swen w rizbendi sistemi tendrustye le ewlwyatekani hkmetsda. **Wate** bo ewey bzanit aya hkmet gringi be bwari tendrusti edat yan na, ebêt lepăl pêweri têrtê temasafay ew bře paraye bkain ke ĥḵûmet bo pêşkeškîrdînî xizmeti tendrûsti bo her hawlytyek mesrafî dakat.  

Sum-POSS thisDEM money that government inPREP health-POSS each single-POSS society spend is-doing-3SP-AGR, measurement important-POSS place and rank-POSS health-3SP-AGR-is. That is for knowing whether government importance with sector health wouldPRF-give or not, necessary-3-is with measurement other look-at thisDEM sum shouldPRF-we-do that government forPREP providing service-POSS health forPREP each citizen spend is-doing-SPP-AGR.

The sum of money that the government is spending for the welfare of each person in the society is a very crucial criterion to show its priority in the government’s agenda. **That is**, to know whether the government is paying attention to health sector, we should look at the amount of money it allocates for providing health services for each person.

The procedure in which *wate* operates as a connective in example 37 suggests that *wate* signals the appositional additive relation. This result is also confirmed by the translation data in the current study as all of the 32 Kurdish translators chose *wate* as the equivalence for *I mean*.

---

4.3.2 Exemplificatory

The second type of the appositional relations is the exemplificatory relation. This type of relation involves the addition of an example in S2 to a statement put forward in S1. The general procedural account implemented by connectives signalling this type of relation is that S1 is a statement S2 is an example. The English connectives that signal this type of relation include *for example, for instance* and *thus* and the Kurdish connectives are *bo nmûne* and *bem core.*

*for example, for instance*

Both *for example* and *for instance* implement similar procedures in which S1 is exemplified by S2. This procedure is typical of the general procedural account of the appositional additive relation. Therefore, *for example* and *for instance* signal the appositional additive relation, as in examples 38 and 39. Also, the data from the English opinion articles showed that the position of both connectives is restricted to the initial position of S2 in the text.

S1, *for example* S2

38) If your mum and dad were butchered by a crazed neighbour who happened to be of a different religion, the murderer will not go to court. If, however, he knocked off the local priest or imam, he has no immunity. Lebanon’s 1991 amnesty, *for example* – Article 3 for those who like to peek into legal inanities – stipulates that amnesties do not apply to those who commit "the assassination or attempted murder of religious dignitaries, political leaders, Arab and foreign diplomats". Lebanese law, in other words, bestows more value on the life of a bigwig than a prole.\(^5\)

S1. *For instance* S2

39) The White House does not want al-Qa’ida to show signs of life, so it has been nervous of its increasing role in Syria. *For instance*, only last week an al-Qa’ida-inspired group called the Al-Nusra Front to Protect the Levant claimed

responsibility for two recent suicide bombings in Damascus that killed more than two dozen people.  

Both examples 38 and 39 show that *for example* and *for instance* introduce examples in S2. Thus, the procedure in which these two connectives operate is the one of exemplification and it is the typical procedure of the appositional additive relation. The translation data in the current study suggested that the most suitable equivalence for *for example* and *for instance* in Kurdish is *bo nimûne*, as chosen by all of the 32 Kurdish translators.

*bo nimûne (for example, for instance)*

The Kurdish connective *bo nimûne* is very similar to the English connectives that link two segments of meaning through exemplification, namely *for example* and *for instance*. The significant fact about this connective is that it is the only connective in Kurdish to be used to signal an additive relation through exemplification. The procedure in which *bo nimûne* operates is S1 is exemplified by S2, as in example 40.


*Turkey policy-INDF-ART very tight inPREP opposite Kurdistan implementing-do-was-3SP-AGR. For exampleCONJ, event-DEF-ART-sPL year-POSS 2007 when Turkey wantPST military-bringing forPREP inside land-POSS Kurdistan.*

Turkey was adopting a very harsh policy against Kurdistan. *For example*, Turkey wanted to enter Kurdistan territory with military force.

The procedure implemented by *bo nimûne* in example 40 is in line with the general procedural account of the appositional additive relation, because *bo nimûne* introduces an example in S2 for a statement put forward in S1. In this regard, Tofiq (2002: 225) stated that *bo nimûne* "usually introduces a report or a numerical list of statements". However,

---

53 Cockburn, P. 25/03/2012 [http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/commentators/patrick-cockburn-the-attempt-to-topple-president-assad-has-failed-7584493.html](http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/commentators/patrick-cockburn-the-attempt-to-topple-president-assad-has-failed-7584493.html)
this is not always the case and the Kurdish data from the opinion articles showed that *bo nimûne* does not necessarily introduce reports, as shown in example 40.

**thus**

The connective *thus* has a rather different procedural account from the other two connectives, namely *for example* and *for instance*, which signal the appositional additive relation through exemplification. The additive connective *thus* combines two sets of segments in which S1 is presenting results of a later cause to come. So, the examples are introduced earlier in the text, unlike the case of *for example* and *for instance*, where the example is introduced in S2. In such contexts, *thus* signals the appositional additive relation by introducing a statement in S2 which is linked to an example put forward in S1 and the relation is to indicate exemplification in the text as in example 41.

S1. *Thus* S2

41) Antoine Garapon suggests that because love is the opposite of hate, the most fraternal of communities can become the most murderous: "The cheerful neighbourliness between the (religious) communities – which is the glory of Lebanon – becomes its hell." **Thus** the Lebanese civil war was "a crime of passion", he says.55

The procedure implemented in example 41 is similar to the general procedure of the appositional additive relation in which S1 is modified by S2. The translation data received from the Kurdish translators suggested that the most suitable equivalence for *thus* in Kurdish is *bem core*, as chosen by 30 translators out of 32.

**bem core (thus)**

The Kurdish connective *bem core* has not been mentioned in Kurdish sources so far. The translation technique of paradigm of correspondences was used to find out its equivalence in English, which was *thus*. Consequently, it can be stated that *bem core* signals the appositional additive relation, as in example 42.

42) Debê nexše řêgayeki zanstî bo řageyandin dabêţeţît ke be hastkirdin be bêrpirsyaretyewê karbkan. **Bem core** xsûsyeti xoy déparêzêt w řolêki kariger dagêţêt bo hêwrkrdinewey qeiran.56

A scientific road map should be drawn for the media so that they should work responsibly. **Thus**, it will preserve its characteristics and will play an effective role in maintaining crises.

The procedure in which **bem core** operates as a connective is similar to the one of **thus**, in which S1 is modified by S2. Therefore, **bem core** signals the appositional additive relation, and the translation data in the current study confirmed that **bem core** is best translated into English as **thus**.

### 4.4 Comparative additive relation

The fourth subtype of the additive relations is the comparative additive relation. Halliday and Hasan state that a related pattern of the additive relation is the "semantic similarity, in which the source of cohesion is the comparison of what is being said with what has gone before" (1976: 247). The comparative additive relations, similar to the appositional relations, do not involve a great deal of subjectivity as the relation signalled between the two segments is about an objective comparison between two states or opinions with no specific emphasis on any of the segments. Applying Relevance Theory's procedural account to the Hallidayan framework in this case would result in building a general procedural account for the comparative additive relation. The general procedure of the comparative additive relation would be S1 is compared (similar or dissimilar) to S2. The connectives that implement this type of procedure in English are **similarly** and **by contrast** and in Kurdish they include **be heman shewe, herweha and le layeki tîr**.

4.4.1 Similar

This type of relation is concerned with showing similarity between two points mentioned in S1 and S2 without emphasis on any of the segments. The typical English connective signalling this type of relation is *similarly* and its corresponding Kurdish connective is *be heman şêwe*.

*similarly*

The typical connective that signals the additive relation through comparison is *similarly*. When *similarly* is used as a connective it usually occurs in the initial position of S2 and it is used by the writer to signal there is comparison between S1 and S2, in which S1 and S2 are similar to each other in terms of emphasis. The procedure in which *similarly* operates is S1 is compared to (similar to) S2, as illustrated in example 43.

41) Barack Obama has given unqualified support to those campaigning for change in the major Arab capitals, actively encouraging the overthrow of one of Washington’s longest-serving allies, Egypt’s President Hosni Mubarak, and backing the military campaign to overthrow Libya’s Colonel Muammar Gaddafi. *Similarly*, a proactive stance has been adopted by the Coalition in London.

In example 43, *similarly* restricts S2 to be similar to S1. This procedure is similar to the general procedural account of the comparative additive relation, and thus *similarly* signals the comparative additive relation. The translation data in the current study suggested that the most suitable equivalence for *similarly* in Kurdish is *be heman şêwe*, as chosen by all the 32 Kurdish translators.

*be heman şêwe (similarly)*

The use of *be heman şêwe* as a connective to signal semantic relation has not been fully explored in the Kurdish literature so far. Ali (1992: 130) claimed that *be heman şêwe* “is a coordinating conjunction that links two independent sentences in Kurdish language”. Ali’s

---

claim was not backed by actual real-world examples but examples he generated himself. He did not further explore the characteristics of *be heman şêwe*, nor did he examine the textual functions apart from its grammatical functions. The data from the Kurdish opinion articles and the translation data in the current study showed that *be heman şêwe* can also signal the comparative additive relation, as shown in example 44.

44) **Be heman şêwe** beweş ciya krawetewe ke hende qeiran berdewam drust debe w careser dekrê, hendêkiş be şêweyeki lenakaw w heřemekî debêt.^[58] Similarly** CONJ, with-this-too difference done-PRE that some crisis continue create being and solution done-PRE, some-too with style-INDF-ART sudden and random being.

... **Similarly**, it is also differentiated in a way that some crises happen continually and they are solved immediately, and some happen suddenly and randomly.

The procedure in which *be heman şêwe* operates as a connective in example 44 is that S1 is compared to S2, where the comparison shows similarity between the two segments. In addition, the translation data confirmed that **similarly** is the most suitable translation of *be heman şêwe* when implementing this procedure.

**4.4.2 Dissimilar**

In contrast to the general procedure of the similarity relation, the dissimilar comparative relation implements a procedure in which S1 is compared to S2 and in which the comparison shows dissimilarity between S1 and S2 without emphasis on any of the segments. The typical connectives that signal this type of relation are **by contrast** and **on the other hand**. In Kurdish, *le layeki tîr* is the typical connective that signals the dissimilar comparative relation.

**by contrast**

The English connective **by contrast** implements the general procedural account of the comparative additive relation in which S1 is dissimilar to S2, which conveys the notion of

comparison. In this regard, Abdul-Zahra (2010: 46) pointed out that the negative comparison of "similarity" is the meaning of "dissimilarity". This notion is also conveyed by the English connective by contrast. Although by contrast appears to signal an adversative relation as the meaning of the word contrast suggests, its function here is solely textual and it shows the dissimilarity between the two segments of a text, as in examples 45 and 46.

S1. By contrast S2

45) Charlotte was slick, fast paced and relentlessly on message, repeating over and over that the only way to prevent America from being turned into a ruthless, winner-takes-all Darwinian jungle is to re-elect Mr Obama. By contrast, the Republican gathering was a sometimes tepid and meandering affair.  

S1 (PARAGRAPH). By contrast S2

46) ...The Protestant loyalist working-class community of the past was one where boys left school at 16 and moved straight into well-paid jobs in the shipyards or heavy engineering companies from which Catholics were excluded. Today, the jobs have gone, but the culture, which placed a low premium on education, remains.

By contrast, the Catholic working class put much greater emphasis on schooling. With the legislating away of institutional anti-Catholic discrimination over the past decades...

le layeki tur (on the other hand)

The translation data in the current study showed that Kurdish does not have a characteristically similar connective to by contrast, but the connective le layeki tur is chosen here that has a textual function and signals additive relation through comparing two dissimilar segments of text. Also, in a translation study, Farhadi translated le layeki tur as

---

60 Leading Article, 05/09/2012, http://www.independent.co.uk/voices/editorials/leading-article-belfast-riots-are-price-of-poor-politics-8104900.html
"on the other hand" and considered it as a conjunction (2003: 98). However she has not referred to le layeki tur as having textual function. Rather she focuses on its structural function in Kurdish sentences. Nevertheless, le layeki tur is examined in 47 and it has a textual function of signaling the comparative additive relation.

47) Le layekewe řaste ke hem Turkyaş w hem Kurdistaniş pewistian be serdaneki lew asteda bo behezkrdni peiwendiekan hebu. Le layeki tur waqiek heye ke nabe pestgwe bxein ewis eweye ke peskewtenakani Kurdistan betaibati le rui aburi w syaseti derewe zor karigern. 61

On side-INDF-ART, true-3S-is that both Turkey–also and Kurdistan–also needed–3P with visit–INDF-ART such level forPREP strong-making relations-DEF-ART have-PST. On side-POSS other, reality-INDF-ART exist that shouldPRF-not neglect-1P-AGR which this-3S-AGR-is that development-DEF-ART-POSS Kurdistan especially in face-POSS economy and politics foreign very effective-are-3P-AGR.

On the one hand, it is true that both Turkey and Kurdistan needed such a high profile visit for improving the relations. On the other hand, there is a reality that should not be overlooked, which is the fact that Kurdistan is particularly very strong in terms of economy and foreign policies.

By using le layeki tur in example 47, the writer signals to the reader that there is another truth to be added to the previous text and that this truth is dissimilar to the one put forward in S1. The additive relation signalled in example 47 is a comparison between two dissimilar states of affair that "Kurdistan" enjoys as a powerful political entity and that Kurdistan needs the neighbour countries to support its growth. The procedure in which le layeki tur operates as a connective is that S1 is compared to S2, and the comparison shows dissimilarity between two pieces of information. This was also confirmed by the translation data, in which 27 Kurdish translators chose le layeki tur as the translation of on the other hand.

4.5 Conclusion

Chapter Four outlined and analysed the additive relations and connectives in English and Kurdish opinion articles. The English connectives were adopted from Halliday and Hasan’s (1976) classification of additive relations and were used as a check list to categorise the Kurdish additive connectives by using paradigms of correspondence (Aimer et al, 2006). On the macro level, the Hallidayan framework was not modified in the current study, because the definitions of the subcategories of the additive relations in Halliday and Hasan (1976) were unproblematic. However, on the micro level, modifications were necessary, because the analytic approach in the Hallidayan framework was not sufficient to account for the characteristics of the additive connectives in the current study. According to Halliday and Hasan, additive connectives are mainly derived from “the class of conjunctions” (1976: 254). This definition is limited to the conjunctions that could either signal a grammatical relation in a single sentence or a semantic relation between two textual segments, such as the connectives and and. This chapter included the additive connectives that signal additive relations in English and Kurdish texts, and distinguished the conjunctions that only signal a grammatical relation from the connectives that signal semantic relations. The rationale for this distinction was to produce a unified list of English additive connectives in order to classify Kurdish additive connectives based on that unified English classification of additive connectives.

This chapter studied the English and Kurdish additive connectives in light of Relevance Theory’s procedural account along with a substitution test between the additive connectives, especially the simple and complex additive connectives. The substitution aimed at differentiating between these two types of the additive relations because they involved a great deal of subjectivity in the Hallidayan framework. Nonetheless, the substitution test in the current study showed that the complex additive connectives like in addition, furthermore, also can be added to the simple additive connective and to add emphasis on one of the segments. Also, the current chapter found out that some complex additive connectives like in addition, further, also, herweha, sereñai eweş upgrade the notion of emphasis in the segments in which they occur and some others downgrade the emphasis in the segments in which they occur, like in addition to, besides, serbari ewe, cige le.
Halliday and Hasan (1976) distinguished the additive connectives according to their grammatical functions only, which could not show the semantic and communicative characteristics of the connectives. However, I outlined the connectives according to four general procedural accounts corresponding to the four sub-categories of the additive relations, namely, simple, complex, appositional and comparative. The simple additive connectives implemented a procedure in which S1 was supplied by additional information in S2 without emphasis on any of the segments. The complex additive connectives implemented the procedure that S1 was supplied by additional information in S2, with emphasis on S2. The connectives which signalled the appositional additive relation implemented a procedure in which S1 was exemplified by S2, and the exposition was one of exemplification, explanation, definition or clarification. The comparative additive relation was signalled by connectives that implemented a procedure in which S1 was compared (in terms of similarity or dissimilarity) to S2. The Relevance Theoretic approach in the current study was able to account for the main characteristics of the connectives and to show the degree of subjectivity in the original classification of the additive relations presented in Halliday and Hasan (1976). The distinction between simple and complex additive relations is somewhat subjective, since the qualities associated with "emphasis" are hard to measure when dealing with written texts, because there is no tonal element in written text. However, Relevance Theory was deployed to clarify this issue. The procedural account of connectives showed that considering constraints on the combined segments would make the difference between these two subtypes of the additive relations stand out. As far as appositional and comparative additional relations are concerned, they are distinct from the previous two in that they have specific qualities like the constraint of exemplification between the two combined segments in the appositional relations and the constraint of comparison between the two segments, in the comparative additive relations without any reference to emphasis.

Chapter Four also discussed the initiality claim made by Brinton (1990: 46), Fraser (1988: 24) and Bell (1998: 515), in which connectives should occupy the initial position in the text in order to signal a cohesive relation. The translation data and the data from the opinion articles showed that initiality does not hold true as a characteristic of all connectives. For instance connectives such as w (1.13%) never occur in the initial position in a text in Kurdish, while it is the most frequently used additive connective in Kurdish texts.
CHAPTER FIVE: ADVERSATIVE RELATIONS IN ENGLISH AND KURDISH

5.0 Introduction

Yu (2008:130) describes the Hallidayan subcategory of adversative relations as:

The connectives that bring in the expressions that are contrary to expectation.
The expressions indicate a contrary result or opinion to the content mentioned previously. In this sense, the adversatives signal the beginning of a different viewpoint.

Similar to the previous chapter, this chapter will focus solely upon the explicitly signalled conjunctive relations. Since this study is a bottom up analysis, it takes the connectives as both the starting and end-point of analysis. Thus, there are certain issues to account for especially when dealing with adversative connectives, for instance the range of polysemy of certain connectives and lack of precise definitions for the subtypes of adversative relation that are mentioned in Halliday and Hasan (1976). These pose challenges for both the study of Kurdish adversative connectives and the translation of these connectives into English and vice versa. Sanders et al. (1992: 2) and Kehler’s (2002: 37) work on discourse relations claims a one-to-one relationship between theoretical definitions of relations and the connectives that signal them. However, concerning adversative relations, the relationship between relations and the connectives is not necessarily one-to-one. For example, the English connective but and the Kurdish connective ke cannot be taken to signal only one type of relation (in an abstract, universal sense). The English connective but signals all the four subtypes of the adversative relations whereas the Kurdish connective ke signals more than one conjunctive relation, such as adversative, causal and temporal relations, established by the context in which the connectives occur.

Rudolph points out that one of the differences between adversative and causal relations is the consideration of “the broken causal chains” in which the types of relations are “conceptualised as occurring in a temporal sequence, the cause being the first one, followed by the effect” (1996: 30). However, in the case of adversative relations
“simultaneity is given” (Ibid: 30). According to Schiffrin, the adversative relations “preface an upcoming proposition whose content contrasts with that of the prior proposition” (1988: 187). In Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification the most common adversative connectives are listed and classified into four subclasses: adversative, contrastive, correction and dismissal, and are distinguished according to their functions in connecting sentences and paragraphs. However, this classification can cause confusion in assigning the particular connectives to the type of relation they signal. As Celce-Murcia and Larsen-Freeman point out, "while such a classification is useful at the global level to sort out possible meaning relationships into types, it presents problems for the definitions of individual connectors" (1999: 531). The functional label "adversative" is particularly difficult, because it is used in the Hallidayan framework as both the super-ordinate label which covers all four subcategories of the adversative relations, as well as onesubcategory of the adversative relations in particular (Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 243). This duplication between the main adversative relation as a category of conjunctive relations and a subtype of the adversative relations is not helpful for the classification of the adversative relations. According to Celce-Murcia and Larsen-Freeman there are two other issues with the Hallidayan framework of the conjunctive relations. Firstly, the individual connectives are often not interchangeable within the same category. Examples 1a, 1b and 1c illustrate how this issue with the classification of the adversative connectives in Halliday and Hasan (1976) might also pose challenges for translators, as suggested by the substitution test in the following examples.

1a) Those responsibilities are no longer delegated; the secretary of state can set objectives and even intervene in the case of a significant failure by a commissioning body, but he is no longer legally and constitutionally responsible. **However**, that view is not shared by the Department of Health's legal team.62

1b) Those responsibilities are no longer delegated; the secretary of state can set objectives and even intervene in the case of a significant failure by a commissioning body, but he is no longer legally and constitutionally responsible. *On the contrary*, that view is not shared by the Department of Health's legal team.

---

1c) Those responsibilities are no longer delegated; the secretary of state can set objectives and even intervene in the case of a significant failure by a commissioning body, but he is no longer legally and constitutionally responsible. *Despite this*, that view is not shared by the Department of Health's legal team.

Examples 1a, 1b and 1c demonstrate the difficulties facing translators in using adversative connectives. The three connectives *however, on the contrary* and *despite this* are all classified under the same label as adversative connectives in the Hallidayan framework. However, they are not always interchangeable (that is, they are not exact synonyms of each other). So, *on the contrary* and *despite this* cannot be applied in every case whenever *however* is used, as they signal rather different types of adversative relations. Thus, they are translated into different connectives in Kurdish. For instance, *on the contrary* is translated into Kurdish as *be pêçewanewe* and *despite this* as *herçende*.

The second issue with the Hallidayan framework is that certain connectives may be paraphrased by more than one expression. Thus, they would be considered as problematic when translating connectives between English and Kurdish, as in examples 2, 3 and 4.

2a) The problem with Iowa is not that it's unrepresentative of the party's mindset *but* that it's too representative...  
2b) Kêşey Iowa ewe niye ke nwênerayeti birurai ħizbeke nakat, *be pêçewanewe* zor nwêneraneyê.

3a) All sorts of games have hat-tricks these days, not merely football *but* hockey as well...  
3b) Lem řožgareda, le hemu jore yariek yarizan detwanê sê golî leser yaktur tomar bkat, nek tenha le yari topi pê *belkû* le hokis.

4a) Our troops will be stuck in the front line of a strategy that has an end date *but* has no clear end game.  
4b) Hêzekanman le hêli pêşewei stratižiyêk gir dexon ke kotaî heye *belam* çoniyeti kotayekei řûn niye.

65 Stratton and Tisdall, 13/04/2011 http://www.guardian.co.uk/politics/2011/apr/12/david-miliband-critical-us-afghanistan
The range of procedural meanings implied by but in 2, 3 and 4 can be interpreted as contrast, correction and cancellation respectively. Given that but can realise these different subtypes of adversative relation, it can be difficult for translators to select the most suitable equivalence, because each of the Kurdish connectives which translate but in the varying adversative relations 2b, 3b, and 4b are distinct and cannot be substituted for each other (this is explained in more detail in sections 5.1, 5.2, 5.3 and 5.4).

Example 5 illustrates the limitations of a single functional label for "adversatives". According to Halliday and Hasan’s definition, the adversative relation is defined as "contrary to expectation" (1976: 243). This description does not always seem to be applicable. For instance, the use of however in example 5, cannot be interpreted as expressing the exact procedural meaning of contrary to expectation. Instead, according to Celce-Murcia and Larsen-Freeman, however has the quality of showing a more general semantic contrast, "one in which exactly two entities or qualities are set adjacent to each other in order to focus on one or more semantic differences between them" (1999: 475). Thus, in example 5 however does not signal contrary to expectation but tends to show contrast between two view points.

5) He sees the issue as one of justice. **However**, many voters feel that these preoccupations have been a distraction from the business of getting the economy growing.66

Celce-Murcia and Larsen-Freeman’s (1999) critique of Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification of conjunctions suggests that the system of conjunctions is ambiguous. This ambiguity can lead to confusion. As a result, it is not sufficient to classify conjunctions purely according to Halliday and Hasan (1976)’s system of conjunctive relations. This in turn will make the task of studying Kurdish connectives more difficult, since there is no unified classification of Kurdish connectives. Nonetheless, Relevance Theory and translation could be used as analytical tools in reducing this ambiguity, as in examples 2b, 3b, and 4b, in which the different interpretations of but are clearer when translated into Kurdish.

Therefore, I have modified Halliday and Hasan's (1976) sub-classification of adversative relations in Table 7 by introducing the less ambiguous label, “contrary to expectation” instead of adversative, and have classified the connective but in all the four subtypes of

---

66 Telegraph view, 06/01/2013, [http://www.telegraph.co.uk/comment/telegraph-view/9782026/Only-a-clear-vision-will-provide-a-clear-mandate.html](http://www.telegraph.co.uk/comment/telegraph-view/9782026/Only-a-clear-vision-will-provide-a-clear-mandate.html)
adversative relation. This modification aims to address the issues around the original classification of the "conjunctions", in which the "functional labels were not accurate in describing the connectives" (Fischer, 2000: 65). However, the Hallidayan framework of the conjunctions is the most detailed one in the literature on English conjunctive relations. Therefore, with the necessary modifications to the Hallidayan classification I have classified the English adversative connectives along with their Kurdish equivalents, into four subtypes; contrary to expectations, contrastive, correction and dismissal, as shown in Table 7.

Table 7: English and Kurdish adversative connectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Relation</th>
<th>Subtypes</th>
<th>English Connectives</th>
<th>Frequency out of 38,572 tokens</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Kurdish Connectives</th>
<th>Frequency out of 36,988 tokens</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Denial</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>keçî</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.016</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yet</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>legel ewêşda</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(al)though</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>egerçî</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>despite this</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>herçende</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.016</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrast</td>
<td>in fact</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>le ŋastîda</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actually</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>however</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>belam</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>but</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>be pêçewanewê</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.008</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correction</td>
<td>instead</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>keçî</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>but</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>belkû</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rather</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>at least</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>hiçnebê</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>i mean</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>wate</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancellation</td>
<td>except</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>béjge le</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.016</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>any way</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td>be herîal</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.1 Contrary to Expectation

Allerton states that the connectives signaling the sense of contrary to expectations "show that the sentence has to be seen as detracting from what went before and thus either reducing the impact of the previous point or replacing it with a different one" (1979: 277). The typical connectives that signal this subtype of the adversative relations in English are: but, yet, although and yet and their equivalents in Kurdish are: keçi, leğel eweşda, egerçi, leğel ewei.

Blakemore (1987) analyses but and regards it as a linguistic expression that does not contribute to the content of the sentence. Adopting the Relevance Theory framework, she focuses on two different specific relations, namely "denial" and "contrast" . Blakemore argues, that but means "and + something else" (Blakemore, 1987: 139). I will attempt to explain what "something else" might entail through translating but into Kurdish. The different procedures for the additional meaning of but include denial of expectation (S2 denies an expectation forwarded in S1), contrast (S2 contrasts a state of affair or an action in S1), correction (S2 corrects a proposition in S1) and dismissal (S2 cancels what has been mentioned in S1). These subtypes are shown in Figure 2, in which but plays a role as a connective, and have been translated into four Kurdish adversative connectives; keçi, belam, be pêçewanewe and belkû. In this section, however, I will focus solely on the first procedural meaning of but, i.e., contrary to expectations.
The translation data received from the Kurdish translators suggested that the adversative connective *but* is polysemous, because it could have four different translations in Kurdish corresponding to the four different interpretations summarised in Figure 2. The translation data in the current study along with data from the English opinion articles showed that all four interpretations (procedures) can be signalled by *but* according to the different contexts in which the connective occurs. Moreover, *but* is one of the most flexible English connectives in terms of its position in the text, as it can occur between two main clauses of a compound sentence, at the beginning of a sentence and at the beginning of a paragraph in opinion articles as shown in examples 6, 7 and 8.

S1, *but* S2

6) True, it will avert a disaster, *but* one that had been fabricated by the Tea Party themselves.\(^67\)

S1. *But* S2

7) In the short term, government spending cuts have caused a very real problem for charities of all kinds. *But* encouraging philanthropy is not just a matter of plugging the gaps left by a cash-strapped state.\(^68\)


\(^68\) Leading Article, 24/03/2012  [http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/leading-articles/leading-article-a-mistaken-tax-on-philanthropy-7583990.html](http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/leading-articles/leading-article-a-mistaken-tax-on-philanthropy-7583990.html)
S1 (Paragraph). *But* S2

8) ...So as the nation ambled towards default, Boehner's response was intended as a purely symbolic piece of political theatre scripted for the Republican gallery.

*But* even the bill that was too right wing to become law was not right wing enough for the Republican right…⁶⁹

Examples 6, 7 and 8 show that although *but* can be used at the beginning of a sentence and the beginning of a paragraph, it can only occur in the initial position of S2 and never S1.

In this section, one of the relations signalled by *but* will be analysed, namely the contrary to expectation relation. The S1 message in example 9 implies that "the rebels' heroic actions were the cause of overthrowing the tyrant". So, the reader expects the writer to elaborate on that. However, this expectation is denied in S2; it is contrary to the reader's expectations to see that "Nato had overthrown the tyrant". This sense of "contradiction" is introduced by *but* as in example 9.

9) Watching al-Jazeera television, it might appear that heroic rebel militiamen had overthrown a tyrant *but*, in reality, military victory was almost wholly due to the NATO air assault.⁷⁰

Katêk sairi kanali telefzyoni alcezîre dekeit, wa pêdeçêt ke pyawe pâlewane milişyakan zorderekyan leser deselat ladawe, *keçi* le fastida serkawtini milişyakan tenha behoy hêrse asmanyekani Nato bu.

The translation data received from the Kurdish translators suggested that the most suitable equivalence for *but* in Kurdish is *keçi* when signalling the contrary to expectation relation, because 18 translators out of 32 chose *keçi* while the other 14 chose *belam*.

*keçi* (*but*)

According to Tofiq's (2002) claim, there is no difference between *keçi* and other adversative connectives. However, he studied the "conjunction particles", as he labels

---


⁷⁰ Patrick Cockburn, 25/03/2012 [http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/commentators/patrick-cockburn-the-attempt-to-topple-president-assad-has-failed-7584493.html](http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/commentators/patrick-cockburn-the-attempt-to-topple-president-assad-has-failed-7584493.html)
them, in a rather general sense and does not give a detailed account for each connective (Tofiq, 2002: 39). The data from the selected opinion articles examined in this study suggests that keçi signals a different relation from other adversative connectives like belam or be pêçewanewe depending on the different procedures implemented in the text. The Kurdish connective corresponding to the contrary to expectations meaning of but is keçi as shown in example 10. In this context, none of the other Kurdish adversative connectives can substitute keçi.

S1, keçi S2

10) Eger ancûmen azad bûaye deitwani le bûdcei emsał (4 ta 5) hezar ganc dabmezrênêt, keçi têgri bo drûstkrawe.\textsuperscript{71}

\textit{If CONJ council-POSS governorate free was-3S-AGR wouldPRF-able-3S-AGR in budget-POSS thisDEM year (4 to 5) thousand youth employ-wouldPRF-3S-AGR on budget-POSS development-POSS regions-DEF-ART, butCONJ obstacle for it made-has-beenPRF}

If the provincial council was independent, they could employ 4 to 5 thousand youths on the regional development budget. \textit{But} there were obstacles.

\textit{yet}

The English connective \textit{yet} can be used in different positions in a text, as shown in examples 11 (S1. \textit{Yet} S2), 12 (S1, \textit{yet} S2) and 13 (S1 (Paragraph). \textit{Yet} S2). However, the use of \textit{yet} as an adversative connective signaling contrary to expectation is constrained to its occurrence in the initial position of S2. In its other positions in the text (either sentence-medial or sentence-final), it does not signal an adversative relation alone but a temporal one (See Chapter Seven: temporal connectives).

S1. \textit{Yet} S2

11) The sentimental value of the countryside, which can be calibrated in the way a Cotswolds cottage is now an ultimate luxury, has never been higher. \textit{Yet} use won't go away.\textsuperscript{72}

\textsuperscript{71}Shekhani, 02/08/2011, \url{http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=9904&z=4&l=1}

\textsuperscript{72}
12) It costs more, per head, to build roads and schools in the country than in towns, yet they are paid for by the central government which then has to use the planning system to contain the effects of the desirability they have created.\textsuperscript{73}

13) …The argument is that if welfare is only used by the poor or unfortunate general public support for the system will dwindle.

\textbf{Yet} Purnell is not apparently totally opposed to universal benefits because one of his proposals is free universal childcare…\textsuperscript{74}

The constraint on \textit{yet} as an adversative connective is that it must occur in the initial position of S2. This is illustrated in the data received from the Kurdish translators, where the adversative \textit{yet} in the initial position of S2 was translated into Kurdish as \textit{legeł eweşda}, while \textit{yet} in the initial position of S1 was translated into Kurdish as \textit{ta (yet)} which signals a temporal relation (See Chapter Seven).

\textbf{legeł eweşda (yet)}

Although \textit{legeł eweşda} has been given very little attention in Kurdish research, it is used considerably widely in Kurdish written genres especially in opinion articles (0.01\%) compared to other adversative connectives. The procedure in which \textit{legeł eweşda} operates is that S1 presupposes an expectation and S2 denies the expectation by presenting a statement that is contrary to the expectation. The translation data in the current study suggested that the most suitable equivalence to English \textit{yet} is \textit{legeł eweşda} which was chosen by 27 translators out of 32.

\textsuperscript{72} Rowan Moore, 04/09/2011, \url{http://www.guardian.co.uk/commentisfree/2011/sep/04/housing-green-belt-countryside}
\textsuperscript{73} Ben Chu, 28/07/2011, \url{http://blogs.independent.co.uk/2011/07/28/what-sort-of-welfare-state-does-james-purnell-want}
\textsuperscript{74} Ben Chu, 28/07/2011, \url{http://blogs.independent.co.uk/2011/07/28/what-sort-of-welfare-state-does-james-purnell-want}
S1, legel eweşda S2

14) Deyangût Newşîrwaniş dwai badast hênani mtmanei xelk, wekû partakani dîka halşwkewt dakat. **Lêgel eweşda** dawi badast hênani dangêki zor la halbžardnekanda hêsta la xemî xellê bê deselat w hežare.  

*Saying-were-3P Newshirwan-too after obtaining trust-POSS people, like parties-POSS other willPRF-do, yetCONJ after obtaining votes much inPREP elections-DEF-ART still in concern-POSS people weak and poor.*

People thought that Newshirwan would treat them as the other parties had done when he obtained power. **Yet** after receiving a high number of votes in the elections, he still pays attention to the weak and poor.

The procedure used in example 14 is that *leğel eweşda* constrains S2 to contradict with the expectation put forward in S1. The translation data in the current study confirmed that *leğel eweşda* signals the contrary to expectation type of the adversative relations, because 27 out of 32 Kurdish translators chose *leğel eweşda* as the equivalence for *yet* in English.

*(al)though*

The type of adversative relation that is signalled by *although* indicates that a proposition introduced by S1 "P" is contrasted by what is mentioned in the main clause S2 "Q". The description of this procedure is provided by König (1989: 4).

**Typical form:** although P, Q  
**Entailments:** P, Q  
**(Non-logical) implication:** normally (if P then not-Q)

For instance, consider examples 15 and 16.

*Although* S1, S2

15) **Although**, as in Libya, the new Egyptian government of Islamist President Mohamed Morsi says it wants to maintain friendly relations with the West, Mr

---

Morsi was hardly forthcoming yesterday in denouncing violent demonstrations that could easily have had a similar outcome to that in Benghazi.  

S1, although S2

16) In Bosnia, criminals continue to be sought, although the war had much in common with the Lebanese conflict.

The statement introduced by although in example 15, is that if "Mr Morsi wants to maintain friendly relations with the West" then he should not have backed "the violent demonstrations". The contrastive relation signalled in example 16 is similar to the one in example 15. However, in example 16, the positions of P and Q are swapped because of the position of although. Iten (2000b) has elaborated on the function of although within the framework of Relevance Theory. She argues that although should be described as a procedural expression. Iten's description of the procedure encoded by although is "Suspending an inference from what follows which would result in an irresolvable contradiction"(2000b:25).

So, by using although in example 15, the writer expresses that the presupposition "Mr Morsi wants friendly relations..." is to be suspended because "He has backed the violent demonstrations". Iten explains that although warns the hearer of a possible "inferential dead end." (Ibid: 26). So, when although occurs in S1, it will have an anaphoric use, i.e, it contrasts a presupposition in S1 by presenting S2 as in example 15. However, when although occurs in S2, it will have a cataphoric use, i.e, it contrasts a presupposition in S2 by presenting S1.

A further important component on the analysis of although is to consider its relationship with other adversative connectives like but. As has been observed in the literature on English adversative connectives (Fraser 1998; Hall, 2004) but and although have much in common. The type of relation signalled by both of them has the interpretation of the notion of a type of contrast or opposition between the propositions in S1 and S2. This is particularly significant when Kurdish connectives are considered. In Kurdish the

---

corresponding connectives to although (egerçi) and but (belam) are normally used together (See egerçi).

egerçi (although)

The Kurdish connective egerçi is the most suitable equivalence for the English although, depending on the argumentative approach in S1 and S2. The data from the Kurdish opinion articles suggest that when egerçi is used in the initial position of S1, then S2 usually starts with belam. For instance, consider example 17, in which the form is Egerçi S1, belam S2. However, belam is omitted in the translation, as it is stylistically not common to have although and but at the same place; they are usually in complementary distribution depending on the context. That is, if although is used in the text segment, there is no need to also use but, as it will be redundant in English.

17) Egerçi nařezaï layene syasiekan le Bexda leser wšei (jiyabûnewe) wakîrdû Nujefi lew wšeye haša bka, belam Jozef Baideni prozei dabeskerdeni Eraq bo se heremî Sia’ w Sunne w Kurd xesteru. 78

Incorrect translation

*Although the political parties' disagreement on using the word "separation" made Nujefi deny using it, but Joseph Biden presented the project for dividing Iraq into three regions; Shiite, Sunni and Kurdish.

Correct translation

Although the political parties' disagreement on using the word "separation" made Nujefi deny using it, Joseph Biden presented the project for dividing Iraq into three regions; Shiite, Sunni and Kurdish.

The translation data received from the Kurdish translators showed that the characteristics of *egerçi* in Kurdish texts could pose challenges for Kurdish translators. For instance 10 out of the 32 Kurdish translators used the equivalent *belam* in example 17 for producing a translation of the English text. This resulted in a weak English text, because in English there is no correlative structure of *although* ... *but*. However, this is a language-specific property of the connective, and could be maintained with the translation technique of *omission*. That is, *belam* may be omitted in the translation in order to produce a fluent English text, as shown in example 17. This has resulted in the fact that Kurdish usually uses a correlative structure of *egerçi* ... *belam*, while English doesn't use *although* and *but* in a correlative structure.

**despite**

The position of *despite* is also flexible and could take either the forms of (*Despite* S1, S2) or (S1, *despite* S2). The difference between these two forms would be the nature of P and Q in the text. That is, the shift of the position of *despite* in the text will affect the arrangement of the parts of the text; the data from the opinion articles suggests that *despite* is accompanied with a negative statement in the text and that the following segment denies the negative expectations by presenting a positive statement. Thus, the form of the text will be (*Despite* P, Q) or (Q, *despite* P), as in examples 18 and 19.

P: negative statement
Q: positive statement

*Despite* S1 + S2

18) **Despite** at least $20.5bn spent on energy efficiency and buildings retrofit programmes, few jobs have been created in that sector.79

S1, *despite* S2

19) Green jobs growth in the US is in fact being driven by emerging energy technologies like wave and wind power and solar thermal, which have grown at

---

around four or five times the rate of the wider economy, *despite* difficult market and finance conditions.  

**herçende (despite)**

The Kurdish connective *herçende* is interesting because it is always accompanied by *belam* (Shwani, 2003: 111). Similar to *egerçi*, the Kurdish data from the opinion articles in the current study showed that all occurrences of *herçende* are accompanied by *belam*, and this phenomenon will affect the translation process. This language specific phenomenon could cause mistranslations or could cause translators produce weak texts in the target language. For instance, in example 20a, *belam* (*but*) in S2 should be omitted in translation, otherwise the English text would sound awkward, for there is no such instance in written English as (*despite + but*) at least as far as the occurrences of *despite* and *but* were found in the English opinion articles surveyed in the current study.

*herçende* S1, *belam* S2

20a) **Herçende** bûce dwakwtue w ta esta be runi dyarniye cend debêt, *belam* serjem prožekan pesend krawn w chawerwani jebejekrdnyan dekret.  

*Despite* *CONJ* budget late*-become and until now with clear not*NEG*-seen how much*-would*PRF*-be-*3S, *but* *CONJ* all projects approve are*-made*PSV and waiting*-POSS implementing*-3P*-AGR is doing. 

**Despite** the postponement of the budget and so far it is not clear how much it will be, all the projects are approved and waiting to be implemented.

The responses received from the Kurdish translators showed that occurrences of *herçende* as in example 20a could be problematic in translation. Eight out of the 32 Kurdish translators did not use the translation technique of omission and thus produced weak English texts, as there is no such case as *Despite* S1, *but* S2 in English. This is shown in the following example in which the same text in example 20b is repeated for illustration here.

---


81 Aram Shekhani, 02/08/2011, [http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=9904&z=4&l=1](http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=9904&z=4&l=1)
Despite the postponement of the budget and so far it is not clear how much it will be, *but* all the projects are approved and waiting to be implemented.

Shwani states that *herçende* combines two sentences in a contrastive relation, in which "the action in the first sentence is contrasted by the action in the second sentence" (2003: 111). His claim, however, is not supported by examples from any actual data or a theoretical framework; rather he uses examples of his own creation. For instance, consider Shwani’s (2003: 112) example as follows:

**Herçende** germa bû belam hilak nebûın.

*Despite* hot was-3S-AGR but tired notNEG-been-2P.

**Despite** being hot, we were not tired.

The use of *herçende* in Shwani’s example signals a subtype of adversative relations; contrary to expectation rather than contrastive. That is, the procedure implemented in this example is S2 is contrary to expectations forwarded in S1. This procedure of contrary to expectation is signalled by *herçende* in Kurdish, and it can be used as a suitable equivalence for English *despite* in such contexts. However, the correlative construction of *herçende* + *belam* is more susceptible among professional translators as it is a language specific phenomenon, in which it exists in Kurdish but not in English. The translation data showed that 19 out of 32 Kurdish translators chose *herçende* as the most suitable equivalence for *despite*.

5.2 Contrastive

According to Schwenter, "contrast" is different from the other subtypes of adversative relations, as it guides the reader to find "incompatibility between P and Q" (2002: 260), and indicates the writer's viewpoint as the only relevant one. The use of but in the following example analysed by Schwenter (2002: 260) guides the reader to consider an assumption that there is incompatibility between "shortness" and "basketball", and urges the reader to disregard the implications of that physical feature in the activity.

John is short, but he’s a good basketball player.

In Schwenter's example above, the speaker’s viewpoint is presented in the form of an opposing viewpoint (basketball players should be tall) and this viewpoint is contrasted by not considering it. In addition, Lang states that "contrast" is different from "concession" in that the former does not "presuppose the validity of 'P therefore Q' in a distinct mental space, and infers an assumption which is in contrast with the two statements being presented side by side" (1984: 244). Based on this concept, the current section will analyze and compare the English and Kurdish connectives that signal contrastive relations.

but

According to the responses from the Kurdish translators, the English adversative connective but can also signal the contrastive relation. The adversative relation signalled in example 21a is not the denial of expectations but it is contrast. By using but in example 21a, the writer guides the reader in S2 to interpret the relation between S1 and S2 as a contrast between two states; "unrepresentative" and "representative".

21a) The problem with Iowa is not that it's unrepresentative of the party's mindset but that it's too representative.83

The connective but in 21a is equivalent to Kurdish be pêçewanewê. It is the typical connective used to convey contrast between S1 and S2 in Kurdish texts, as shown in example 21b.

21b) Kêşey Iowa ewe niye ke nwênerayeti biruñai ūrizbeke nakat, **be pêçewanewe** zor nwêneraneye.

*Problem-POSS Iowa this not-is that represent ideology-POSS party-DEF-ART not-do, butCONJ very representative-3S-is.*

(Back translation)

The problem with Iowa is not that it does not represent its party's ideology **but** that it's too representative

Lakoff claims that when **but** is used in these contexts; showing contrasting ideas or features, it can only signal "semantic opposition" (1971:133), and it is simply a *contrastive* relation between S1 and S2. Consequently, the procedure implemented by **but** in example 21a and by **be pêçewanewe** in example 21b is that S1 and S2 are contrasting with each other. The translation data received from the Kurdish translators suggested that the most suitable equivalence for **but** in this case is **be pêçewanewe**; 17 out of 32 translators chose **be pêçewanewe** as the equivalence for **but** when implementing the contrastive procedure.

**be pêçewanewe (but)**

According to Tofiq, **be pêçewanewe** is the typical "conjunction particle" that signals contrast between two sentences (2002: 230). His claim is based on presence of **pêçewanewe** in the expression. However, Tofiq dealt with **be pêçewanewe** as a grammatical conjunction and failed to recognise the potential for this phrase to function beyond the clause as a connective. The data from Kurdish opinion articles suggest that **be pêçewanewe** operates in a procedure where S2 contrasts S1 by presenting incompatibility between two view points, as illustrated in example 22.

S1. **Be pêçewanewe** S2
22) Serçaweyekani opozisyon pşrugendei ewe dekan ke sarokayati herêmi Kurdistan basi le ciyabûnewei Kurdistan kîrdûë le Eraqda. \textit{Be pêçewanewe} le çendîn boneda seroki herêm jexti leser yek parçêî Eraq kîrdotewê. \textsuperscript{84}

\textit{Source-POSS opposition propaganda thisDEM make-3P that presidency-POSS region-POSS Kurdistan talk about separation-POSS Kurdistan has-donePRF inPEP Iraq. ButCONJ inPREP many occasions president-POSS region-POSS Kurdistan insistPST onPREP one-piece-POSS Iraq havePRF-done-3S.}

The opposition sources argue that the Kurdistan Region presidency intends to detach Kurdistan from Iraq. \textit{But}, in several occasions, the Kurdistan Region’s president has insisted on a unified Iraq.

The procedure in which \textit{be pêçewanewe} operates in example 22 is that there are two contradicting views in S1 and S2. The Kurdish data suggested that all occurrences of \textit{be pêçewanewe} are found in such contexts where there is contrast or contradiction between S1 and S2. This is verified by the translation data as well, in which the use of \textit{but} to signal the contrastive relation was translated into Kurdish as \textit{be pêçewanewe} by 17 out of 32 Kurdish translators.

\textit{however}

\textit{However} signals the contrastive relation by suggesting incompatibility between S1 and S2 and highlights the writer’s viewpoint, usually presenting S2 as the favoured choice, as in examples 23 and 24. According to Williams’ research on conjunctions, the functional label of "adversatives" offers vague meanings for the adversative connectives affiliated to the same category. He argues that "an additional element is required in order to come to adequate definitions" (1996: 531). As far as the English connective \textit{however} is concerned, he (Ibid: 537) suggests that:

\textsuperscript{84} Sarwar Ameen, 16/04/2012, \url{http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=14539&z=10&l=1}
However might be used wherever attention is drawn to a difference. The difference may be between expectations and reality, between what is uncertain and what is certain, between antonyms or other kinds of lexical opposition. It may even be used as a discourse marker to change topics in conversation.

However is a rather flexible connective in terms of its position in the text, as it could be found at the beginning of a sentence or a paragraph. However, it should always be contained in S2 rather than S1, as in examples 23 and 24.

S1. However S2

23) Those responsibilities are no longer delegated; the secretary of state can set objectives and even intervene in the case of a significant failure by a commissioning body, but he is no longer legally and constitutionally responsible. However, that view is not shared by the Department of Health's legal team.85

S1 (Paragraph). However S2

24) ...It is seen as a way to offset a decline in physical DVD sales, while also helping to combat internet piracy and initiate a radical change in film buffs’ viewing habits.

However, not all of the big six studios are on board. Fithian confirmed that Paramount Pictures has privately expressed opposition to the shorter window…86

The connective however is one of the connectives that cannot occur in the initial position of S1 in English texts. There must be a proposition before however in order to show the contrast of that proposition with S2. The translation data suggest that however does not pose remarkable challenges for Kurdish translators, as its polysemy is restricted by the fact that it can only occur in the initial position of S2 in the text. The translation data in the

current study suggested that there are limited translation options for this connective in Kurdish such as *legel eweşda* and *herçende* which can be used interchangeably without any change in the relation being signalled between S1 and S2. Thirteen out of the 32 Kurdish translators gave both options *legel eweşda* and *herçende* as the translation of *however*. However, 19 out 32 translators chose *belam* as the only Kurdish equivalence for *however*.

**while**

Meyer et al. (2011: 198) studied the English connective *while* in detail and claimed that it is "highly ambiguous". The ambiguity is thought to have emerged from the different senses conveyed by the use of *while* when translated into French. The data from the opinion articles show that *while* has two main procedural meanings which signal contrastive and temporal relations, depending on the context. It is the former meaning which is considered here. The observed translations into Kurdish suggest that the procedures of Relevance Theory as applied to translation can help disambiguate *while*, for example, setting out whether the equivalent Kurdish connective, *le katêkda*, signals an adversative relation (*while*) or a temporal relation (*when*). So, through Relevance Theory’s procedural approach the ambiguity of *while* can be disentangled especially when translated into Kurdish. The procedural meaning of *while* conveys a contrastive relation between S1 and S2 by presenting two contrasting viewpoints, actions or states of affair in S1 and S2, as in example 25:

25) A recent You Gov poll showed two-thirds of Democrats preferred a member of Congress who "compromises to get things done", *while* two-thirds of Republicans preferred one who "sticks to his principles, no matter what".  

The procedure that is implemented by *while* in example 25 is that S2 contrasts with S1. This is in line with the general procedure implemented in the contrastive adversative relation. The English data from the opinion articles in the current study showed that *while* has an identical synonym, namely *whereas*, which exhibits similar procedural accounts.

**whereas**

---

The data from the English opinion articles suggested that both while and whereas could be substituted by each other without any change of meaning or the relation signalled between S1 and S2, as in examples 26a and 26b.

26a) When it comes to taking revenge, Alistair Darling is a politician who likes to serve the dish chilled. Whereas Tony Blair and Peter Mandelson rushed out their books within weeks of Labour's ejection from power.88

26b) When it comes to taking revenge, Alistair Darling is a politician who likes to serve the dish chilled. While Tony Blair and Peter Mandelson rushed out their books within weeks of Labour's ejection from power.

The procedures implemented in examples 26a and 26b suggest that S2 contrasts with S1 and thus both while and whereas signal the contrastive additive relation. The translation data in the current study showed that both of these connectives are translated into Kurdish as le katêkda. Twenty nine out of the 32 translators chose both while and whereas to be equivalences for Kurdish le katêkda.

le katêkda (while, whereas)

The position of le katêkda specifies the relation it signals in Kurdish texts. Unlike English while in which the type of relation it signals is not affected by its position in the text, when le katêkda is used in such contexts as in example 27, it signals a subtype of adveriative relations, namely the contrastive relation. That is, S1 is contrasted with what comes in S2. However, if it is used at the beginning of S1, it will signal a temporal relation and it is translated as "when". Thus, the ambiguity of le katêkda could pose challenges for translators, but the ambiguity is resolved by applying Relevance Theory’s procedural approach. In the case of this subtype of adveriative relation, what follows le katêkda contrasts with what precedes it when le katêkda occurs in the initial position of S2, as in example 27.

- S1. Le katêkda S2

27) Le Kurdistan le mawei cend salêkda sedan mlionêr drust daben. **Le katêkda** komelgei Kurdi aw helwmejanei mlionêr drûstdekat têida bûni niye.89

**In** PREP Kurdistan **in** PREP period-POSS few years hundreds millionaires create beingPSV, while CONJ society-POSS Kurdish thoseDEM criteria-POSS millionaire making PREP-3S existing notNEG-there.

In just a few years, hundreds of millionaires emerged in Kurdistan, **while / whereas** the criteria of making millionaires do not exist in the Kurdish society.

The procedure in which **le katêkda** operates as an adversative connective is that S1 contrasts with S2. In such cases, the position of **le katêkda** in the text is restricted to initial position of S2, but when **le katêkda** occurs in the initial position of S1, it signals the temporal relation (See Chapter Seven **le katêkda**). It seems that **le katêkda** is the only Kurdish adversative connective in which the relation signalled changes with the change of its position in the text; whether initial position of S1 or S2. This is despite the claims made by Sabir (2009) that **le katêkda** signals only a temporal relation between two sentences "specifying the immediate time of the action" (2009: 113).

**On the contrary**

According to Fraser "the aspects of the discourse segments S1 and S2 being contrasted must be members of a contrastable set" (2009: 91). The elements that are contrasted need to be contrastable in at least one semantic dimension. Fraser states that "each member of the set consisting of the terms thin, fat, heavy, skinny, obese, slim, chunky, etc., is comparable with the other members along the dimension of 'weight' " (Ibid: 92). However, in case of using **on the contrary**, contrasted elements need not be antonyms. Rather, S1 and S2 could be two different points of the same topic, as in example 28, where "economy risk" is not the antonym of "spending cut" and there is no clear set that combines both S1 and S2 here. However both S1 and S2 are regarded as contrasts in terms of political policy.

28) The stimulus has run out of steam and like ours, the economy risks flat-lining. Nor, unlike 1996, is there any indication of a voter backlash for mainstream Republican candidates. **On the contrary**, Republicans can argue

---

persuasively that where they blazed the trail on slashing spending, the president has followed.\textsuperscript{90}

The procedure in which \textit{on the contrary} operates in example 28 is that S1 is contradicted by S2. This falls into the general procedure implemented in contrastive adversative relations, and thus \textit{on the contrary} signals the contrastive adversative relation. The translation data in the current study suggested that \textit{on the contrary} is best translated into Kurdish as \textit{be pêçewane}, because 30 out of 32 Kurdish translators chose \textit{be pêçewane} as the equivalence for \textit{on the contrary}. One reason for selecting this equivalence could be that the English connective contains the term \textit{contrary} which carries the notion of contradiction or contrast, and that \textit{pêçwe} in Kurdish also means ‘contrary’, as shown in example 28.

5.3 Correction

Correction relations are recognised in the procedure which can be described as presenting the proposition that S1 is a misconception or a misunderstanding which is corrected by the information given in S2. Hall claims that the correction may be in the conceptual content of the assumption in S1 and/or "some aspect of the linguistic form used to express it" (2004: 201). The connectives that signal a correction relation and replace the previous proposition in discourse with another include: \textit{but}, \textit{instead}, \textit{rather} in English and \textit{belkû, keçi, le ŏastida} in Kurdish.

\textit{but}

The English connective \textit{but} can also signal the correction relation as a subtype of adversative relations. For instance, the procedure implemented in example 29a is that what follows \textit{but} (S2) corrects an assumption put forward in what precedes it (S1). That is, S1 is a false assumption and S2 is a correction of this false assumption, as signalled by the connective \textit{but}.

29a) All sorts of games have hat-tricks these days, not merely football \textit{but} hockey as well.\textsuperscript{91}

\textsuperscript{90} Editorial, 31/07/2011, \url{http://www.guardian.co.uk/commentisfree/2011/jul/31/us-debt-crisis-obama-cuts}

\textsuperscript{91} Guardian Editorial, 31/07/2011 \url{http://www.guardian.co.uk/commentisfree/2011/jul/31/in-praise-of-hat-tricks}
This function is verified in a procedural account of Relevance Theory, in which the implementation is that what follows but corrects a statement in what precedes it. Regarding the procedure in example 29a, S2 "Hockey has hat-tricks" corrects a proposition in S1 "Only football has hat-tricks". Out of 32 translators 21 chose belkû as the equivalence for but when implementing this procedure. Thus, the translation data in the current study suggested that the most suitable Kurdish equivalence for such use of but is belkû in which the same procedure applies, as shown in example 29b.

29b) Lem ṭoẓgareda, le hemû jore yariek yarizan detwanê sê golî lesîr yaktîr tomar bkat, nek tenha le yari topo pê belkû le hokîş.

These DEM days, in PREP all types PREP games players able-are three goals on PREP-top each-other score could PRF-3P, not only in PREP game POSS ball POSS foot but CONJ in PREP hokey-too.

(Back Translation)

All sorts of games have hat-tricks these days, not merely football but hockey as well.

belkû (but)

The Kurdish connective corresponding to the correction but is belkû. The procedure which highlights this meaning is S1 presents an assumption which is ordinarily false and S2, with the help of belkû, corrects that false assumption. This is illustrated in example 30.

30) Her ştêk bedihatbêt bo Kurd xër w sedeqe nebûe. Belkû beri mandubûni xoyane deidûrnewe.92

Any thing INDF-ART achieved for PREP Kurds charity was not NEG-3S. But CONJ product hard work POSS theirs was-3S harvest-3S-3P.

All achievements of the Kurds were not given by charity. But the Kurds harvested their hard work.

92 Kan'an Ba'addin, 05/03/2012, http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=3739&z=4&l=1
**Belkû** is mentioned in Shwani’s (2003) work. He states that "belkû is a conjunction particle that has the function of signalling contrast between two sentences" (2003: 99). However, according to the Kurdish data in this study, belkû signals a more specific subtype of the adversative relations, which is the correction of a previous statement. That is, the procedure in which belkû operates is that S2 corrects a misunderstanding in S1. For instance, S2 in example 30 is introduced by belkû and forms a correction to a false proposition that "All of the Kurds' achievements are from charity" and that the correct interpretation is that "Kurds are hard-working people".

**Instead**

Based on its position in the text, instead is used to signal the correction relation between two text segments, by replacing a statement in S1 with another presented in S2. In this case, the position of instead is restricted to initial position of S2 as in examples 31 and 32. When it occurs in other positions, it will have a structural function; as a constituent in the sentence and it will not signal the semantic relation of correction.

S1 instead S2

31) His efforts at identifying with the everyday concerns of rural Iowans instead left him vulnerable to accusations of a cosmopolitan lifestyle and elitist palate.  

S1, and instead S2

32) She sent me on a two-week sailing course, during which I never once managed to catch the wind, and instead spent every day languishing alone in my Topper waiting for the rest of the party to reappear over the horizon.  

The procedure implemented in example 31 and 32 is that S2 corrects a false assumption put forward in S1. Therefore, instead signals the correction adversative relation. Twenty six of the 32 translators gave the most suitable equivalence for instead in Kurdish as keçi.

---

The Kurdish adversative connective *keçi* operates in a very similar procedure as the one of *instead*, as in example 33.

33) Debwaya sarkirde Arebekañ rexoskerbwan bo jebeje krdini madey 140, *keçi* dalen aw madeye mrdwe w kari penakret.\(^95\)

*ShouldPRF-it-been leaders Arab-DEF-ART way-nice-maker-been for execute making-POSS Article 140, insteadCONJ say-3P this Article dead-is-3S-AGR and work with-notNEG-done.*

The Arab leaders should have been cooperative in executing Article 140. *Instead*, they are saying that this Article is void and cannot be executed.

**rather**

The adversative connective *rather* has position constrains, i.e., in order to signal a correction relation it should occupy the initial position in S2, as in example 34. It is not considered as a connective when it occurs in combination with *or or than* as in 35 and 36. The reason is that when *rather* occurs with these two elements, it loses its function as a connective; in terms of the procedural account it will only have a structural function as part of the sentence. For instance, the correction of a misunderstanding is clearly seen in example 34 but not in 35 and 36.

34) Uproar over noise is not the material point, however. *Rather*, it is that demand will swiftly outstrip even a third runway, rendering the multi-billion investment little more than a costly stop-gap.\(^96\)

**with or**

35) There are two fantasies about the British countryside that were given ample play in last week's furious debates about the rights and wrongs of building

---

\(^{95}\) Samad Chawsheen, 10/07/2011, [http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=9546&z=4&l=1](http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=9546&z=4&l=1)<br>

\(^{96}\) Leading Article, 06/09/2012, [http://www.independent.co.uk/voices/editorials/leading-article-another-runway-at-heathrow-is-no-solution-8106814.html](http://www.independent.co.uk/voices/editorials/leading-article-another-runway-at-heathrow-is-no-solution-8106814.html)
there. The first thinks this country can be like a mythic America, that we only need to rip up red tape, abolish our planning system – invariably "sclerotic" – and allow people to build their log cabins or rather ranch-style homes with four-car garages wherever they like.\(^ {97}\)

with than

36) If we believe that social networking, rather than any more profound social dysfunction, is to blame for the disorder, it follows that we must crack down on the free flow of information, and make examples of those who "abuse" it – as if freedom of speech were a privilege to be earned, rather than a right to be defended.\(^ {98}\)

at least

At least often co-occurs with the adversative connective but. Thus, it will signal the "correction" relation between the two segments as in example 37. The use of at least in medial position of S2 seems to be the most common one in English texts, as has been observed in opinion articles. This also counters the claim made by Halliday (1985: 39) and Blackmore (2006: 238) that connectives should occupy the initial position in S1 or S2 in order to signal semantic/pragmatic relations.

- S1. at least (medial position) S2

37) To say this electoral strategy is a work in progress is a huge understatement. But it is, at least, a coherent strategy, and a strategy which has the Lib Dems’ role in government – present and future – at its very heart.\(^ {99}\)

- S1 at least (medial position) S2

38) When Bill Clinton lurched rightwards to secure re-election in 1996, he had at least the benefit of a strong economy.\(^ {100}\)

**hiçnebê (at least)**

The suitable Kurdish equivalence for *at least* based on the procedure in which the connective operates is *hiçnebê* and it signals a similar relation "correction" between two text segments as in example 39.

39) Ew nakoki w giržyei ke èsta lenêwan Alawi w Maliki da heye hemîse Kurdişi tëwa daglênen. Awan hemîse şeşyane leser kursi deselat w Kurdish deken be nawbziwan. Her *hiçnebê* leber berzewendi gişti Êraq pewiste yektiri qbul bken w leser mezi giftugo dambisên bo cairerêkirî di kesekan nek be bakarhenani hez.¹⁰¹

*ThisDEM disagreement and tension that now between Alawi and Maliki have always Kurds-also involve-3P-do. They3 always fighting-are over chair-POSS authority and Kurds-also Present-make-3P with referee. At least, CONJ forPREP sake interest general-POSS Iraq necessary-is-3S-AGR each-other accept shouldPRF-do-3P and on table-POSS discussion shouldPRF-sit-3P forPREP solving-POSS problem-DEF-ART-PL.*

Alawi and Maliki always drag Kurds into the tensions between them. They are continuously fighting over power then make the Kurds do the referee part and mediate between them. They should, *at least* for the sake of Iraq’s general interest, accept different views and solve their disputes through dialogue and via using military force.

**precisely**

The connective *precisely* combines two parts of a text in a rather different way from *at least* and *rather*. The S2 in example 40 shows that *precisely* is used to signal a correction relation between two segments of the text in which S2 corrects a misguided proposition that is commonly perceived by others in S1. However, there was no Kurdish connective to be used as an exact equivalent of this connective, neither in the Kurdish data from the opinion articles nor in the translation data. In order to signal a specific type of elaborated

relation that tends to correct a previous false impression, Kurdish uses the connective \textit{le řastîda} which is literally translated to \textit{in fact} as in example 41.

40) They will say that this is all history, a lot of which has already been detailed in earlier books. \textit{Precisely}, "History" was the word used by Ed Balls when he tried to bat off the accusations leveled at him...\textsuperscript{102}

\textbf{le řastîda (in fact)}

41) Mawei ziyatır le 7 sale lelayen Îkûmeti Slêmaniyewe řêţeyek le mûçei fermanberanı nawçeke be naheq dexwrê, ciyawaz le Hewlêr w hemû nawçekevi trî Ėraq, \textit{le řastîda} eme karêki nawiţdaniye w peêewanei bnemakani mafî mrov w destûri Ėraqișe ke jext leser mûçei yekebewe bo hemû fermanberan beramber heman kar ke deiken.\textsuperscript{103}

\textit{During more than 7 year-is fromPREP government-POSS Sulaymaniyah rate-INDF-ART fromPREP salary-POSS employees-POSS area-DEF-ART with-injustice eaten-is-3S-AGR, different from Hawler and all areas-POSS other Iraq, in fact thisDEM work-POSS none-conscience–is-3S-AGR and opposite-POSS fundamentals right human and constitution-POSS Iraq-also-is that press on salary equal CONT-do-is forPREP all employees forPREP same work that CONT-3P-do-are-3P-AGR.}

It has been more than seven years since institutions in Sulaymaniyah illegally cut a sum from the salaries of the employees in the area, unlike the case in Hawler or other areas in Iraq. \textit{In fact}, this is a cruel attempt and against fundamental human rights. Also, it contravenes the Iraqi constitution, which insists upon equal salaries for the same roles all over Iraq.

\textbf{5.4 Dismissal / Cancellation}

\textsuperscript{102} Rawnsley, A. 04/09/2011, \url{http://www.guardian.co.uk/commentisfree/2011/sep/04/alistair-darling-memoir-labour-cuts}

\textsuperscript{103} Mustafa, L. 19/05/2011, \url{http://www.sbeiy.com/ku/article_detail.aspx?ArticleID=5007&AuthorID=936}
Dismissal relations include those connectives that generally fit into the procedure: "S2 cancels and dismisses the importance of S1". The list of dismissal connectives in this section include: English *but, except, nevertheless, nonetheless* and Kurdish *belam, bècge le, beherḥal.*

**but**

Consider *but* in the procedure implemented in 42a, in which S2 cancels or dismisses the importance of the topic forwarded in S1. The proposition expressed by S1 in example 42a is indirectly contradicted and dismissed by S2, which is introduced by *but*. So, in terms of Relevance Theory’s procedural approach, *but* can also signal dismissal in English texts. This claim is supported by the possibility of translating *but* into Kurdish as *belam* in these contexts, as in example 42b. This type of relation is not found in other procedures in which *but* signals other subtypes of the adversative relation. Bach (1986) claims that the different interpretations of *but* have proved *but* to be ambiguous. However, these different readings of *but* should not be considered as ambiguous, because each interpretation can be attributed to different procedures.

42a) Our troops will be stuck in the front line of a strategy that has an end date *but* has no clear end game.\(^\text{104}\)

42b) Hêzekanman le hêli pêşewei stratiţiwyêk gir dexon ke kotaî heye *belam* çoniyeti kotayekëi ŋun niye.

The procedure implemented in examples 42a and 42b is that S2 cancels a proposition put forward in S1. Therefore, the relation being signalled in both examples is the *dismissal adversative* relation. The translation data from the Kurdish translators suggested *belam* as a suitable Kurdish equivalence for such uses of *but* as in example 42b and 43, where all the 32 translators chose *belam* as the translation for *but* in this context.

*belam* (but)

\(^{104}\) Stratton and Tisdall, 13/04/2011,  [http://www.guardian.co.uk/politics/2011/apr/12/david-miliband-critical-us-afghanistan](http://www.guardian.co.uk/politics/2011/apr/12/david-miliband-critical-us-afghanistan)
The procedure in which belam is used is similar to the one where the dismissal but is used, in which S1 is cancelled and dismissed by a statement in S2. For instance, belam in example 43 introduces a positive statement "the region is now trouble free" which dismisses a negative statement put forward in S1 "catastrophic events happened".

43) Ew řûdawane zor karesatbar bûn, belam êsta doxi herêmakeman zor arame.105

ThatDEM event-PLs very unpleasant were-3P, butCONJ now situation-POSS region-DEF-ART-our very quiet-is-3S.

Those events were catastrophic, but now our region enjoys tranquility.

The procedure in which belam operates is that S2 cancels a proposition or a statement mentioned in S1. This procedure is similar to the procedure implemented by the dismissal but in English.

except

The use of except leads the reader to exclude part of a statement S2 from a more general entity presented in S1. So, in example 44, except signals a dismissal of the generalisation presented in S1 by excluding two categories from the rest.

44) Two amnesties for killers of the 1975-90 civil war specifically exempt all murderers from trial except those who killed religious or political leaders.106

The procedure implemented in example 44 is that except constrains S2 to be the cancellation or dismissal of a statement put forward in S1. The translation data received from the Kurdish translators in the current study suggested that the most suitable equivalence for except in such a case is bècge le, as chosen by all the 32 translators.

bècge le (except)

The most suitable equivalence for except, based on the similarity of the procedure in which they occur, is bècge le. The translation in example 45 suggests that bècge le signals a dismissal relation between S1 and S2, because it is translated into English as except. Also,

105 Barzani, N. 26/02/2012, http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=13606&z=4&l=1
the procedural account of bècge le is similar to the general procedure implemented in the dismissal adversative relation.

45) Nûri Maliki hiç belgeyeki tokmei nabû ka Herêmi Kurdistan dayewêt le ēraq jya bètewe, bèjge le propagendei şeqam nabêt ke wekû serçawe bekâridehêna.\textsuperscript{107}

\textit{Nuri Al-Maliki any proof-INDF-ART solid notNEG-have-PAST that Region-POSS Kurdistan want-PRE from Iraq apart be-it, except PREP propaganda-POSS street wouldPRF-be-not that like source doing-3S-was.}

Nuri Al-Maliki didn’t have any solid proof that Kurdistan Region wanted independence from Iraq, \textbf{except} the propagandas on street that he was using as a source.

\textit{nevertheless}

According to Williams, the procedure implemented in the case of \textit{nevertheless} or \textit{nonetheless} is "X implies Y, and X is true, but Y is not true" (1996: 532). However, I believe this is not always the case, as according to the data in this study the procedure in which \textit{nevertheless} participates is usually "S2 cancels and dismisses the importance of a statement mentioned in S1" as in example 46.

- S1 (Paragraph). \textit{Nevertheless}, S2

46) It is a curious fact that the three most important leaders who supported and prosecuted the war in Iraq – Bush, Blair and John Howard in Australia – were all re-elected after it. Iraq goes down as the great overwhelming disaster in history-as-written-by-the-BBC, but most voters have never seen it so unequivocally.

\textbf{Nevertheless}, if Mr Blair had known and said on September 12, 2001 that, 10 years later, we would have lost 179 servicemen in Iraq and 200 more than that in Afghanistan, and that we would still be in the latter until at least 2014, one

\textsuperscript{107}Ameen, S. 16/04/2012, \url{http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=14539&z=10&l=1}
presumes that British participation in the invasions would not have got off the
ground.108

- S1. Nonetheless, S2

47) To the annoyance of the Tory right, the Liberal Democrats have neutered
many of the more controversial recommendations from venture capitalist
Adrian Beecroft. Nonetheless, Mr Cable is expected to announce changes
making it easier for companies to get rid of staff, and cutting the time and cost
of doing so109.

The translation data received from the Kurdish translators showed that the most suitable
equivalence for nevertheless in Kurdish is beherĥal, as chosen by 23 translators out of 32.

beherĥal (nevertheless)

Based on the similar procedure to that of nevertheless, the Kurdish connective beherĥal
usually signals a dismissal relation by presenting a statement in S2 that discards the
importance of a previous statement in S1, as given in example 48. That is, S2 in example
48 suggests that "the criticism about leaders giving money to their affiliates" is not a more
dangerous issue than "distributing bullets".

48) Sarkrdekan êsta pare ba darwdestakanian debexşnewe. Beherĥal pare
dabeşkirdn bastre le gulle baxşînewe.110

Leaders-DEF-ART now money toPREP affiliates-3P-AGR spread-3P.
NeverthelessCONJ money distribution better-is-3S than bullet giveCONT.

Nowadays, the leaders give money to their affiliates. Nevertheless, spreading
money is better than spreading armaments.

The procedure in which *beherĥał* operates is similar to the general procedural account of the dismissal adversative relation. The use of *beherĥał* in example 48 is to indicate that S1 is dismissed or cancelled by the S2.

**5.5 Conclusion**

Chapter Five analysed and compared English and Kurdish adversative relations and connectives in light of the procedural account within the Relevance Theory framework. The chapter modified the Hallidayan framework of adversative connectives by classifying the subtypes of the adversative relations, according to Relevance Theory's procedural accounts of the connectives, in order to show distinctive characteristics of the adversative relations and connectives.

One of the issues in the Hallidayan framework was that the label "adversative" is used to refer to a sub-category of the conjunctive relations, and also to a subtype of the adversative relations (Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 242). This could create confusion in the classification of the adversative connectives into the four subtypes of the adversative relations. Therefore the adversative relation in the micro level of the classification was changed to contrary to expectation and the label adversative in the macro level was re-used as it is. Another addition to the Hallidayan framework in the current study was the characteristic of polysemy in analysing adversative connectives. Polysemy is considered a vital property of the adversative connectives which could pose challenges for translators. For example, the translation data in the current study showed that the English connective *but* is polysemous and signals the four different subtypes of the adversative relations. The paradigm of correspondences for *but* included four different Kurdish equivalences such as *keçi, be pêçewanewe, belam and belkû*. Moreover, the substitution test for these four Kurdish connectives suggested that they could not be used interchangeably in Kurdish texts.

Finally, this chapter argued against the claim made by Sanders et al. (1992) and Kehler (2002), that there is a one-to-one relation between conjunctive relations and connectives in English.
CHAPTER SIX: CAUSAL-CONDITIONAL RELATIONS IN ENGLISH AND KURDISH

6.0 Introduction

Chapter Six focuses on English and Kurdish causal connectives that are used by writers of selected opinion articles to render explicitly causal-conditional relations (see section 6.2, 6.3 and 6.4). The chapter attempts to modify the Hallidayan framework of the causal relations on the macro level (by reformulating the subtypes of causal relations) and the connectives on the micro level (by reclassifying the connectives within the new subtypes of causal relations). Causality is a complex phenomenon, which has been researched extensively in many fields, including philosophy, science and sociology. Here the focus remains on a textual perspective which builds on one of the key characteristics of causality, namely its relationship to iconicity. The framework used to explore this further is Sanders et al’s (1992: 2) cognitive parameter of "Order of Segments" verified with the translation technique of "paradigms of correspondence" (Aijmer et al, 2006: 105). On the macro level of coherence relations, Sanders et al classify the relations in terms of the basic order of the textual segments S1 and S2, in which the order of the segments could either be "iconic or non-iconic" (1992: 3). In terms of the causal relations, in the current study, "iconic" refers to the cause-effect relations in which S1 is the cause segment and S2 is the effect segment (Blakemore, 2006: 243). The term "non-iconic" refers to the effect-cause relation (Sweetser, 1990: 77), in which S1 is the effect segment and S2 is the cause segment of the text. The current study divides the conditional relations into two subtypes, namely, iconic (condition-result) and non-iconic (result-condition) and the same order of the segments in the causal relation applies to the conditional relations. Based on this distinction, this chapter reorganises the classification of the causal-conditional relations into iconic and non-iconic causal relations and iconic conditional and non-iconic conditional relations. In addition to the order of segments, the current chapter also explores other properties of the causal relations and connectives such as the "semantico-pragmatic status" (Moreno, 2003: 270) of the segments S1 and S2 and the position of the causal connectives in the text; whether the connective occurs in the initial position of S1 or S2. According to Moreno, the semantico-pragmatic status concerns analysis at the different levels of the "sentence, clause and text" (Ibid: 270). However, the current study is only focused on the textual level. That
is, the semantico-pragmatic parameter is used to detect whether or not S1 or S2 stands as
the cause. As the cause and effect are in complementary distribution, if there is cause in S1
there should be effect in S2 and vice versa.

There are several issues with the Hallidayan framework of the causal-conditional relations.
The causal relations are divided into two types - "external/internal" and "internal"
(Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 257) - which are not defined comprehensively. Halliday and
Hasan state that "the distinction between the external and the internal types of cohesion
tends to be a little less clear cut in the context of causal relations" (1976: 257). These two
subtypes are further divided into six sub-categories "general causal, specific causal,
reversal causal, specific causal, conditional and respective" in the classification (Ibid: 243).
However, like other types of relation where there is no isomorphic mapping between
individual connectives and the relations signalled, connectives like because and then are
repeated under the sub-categories "general causal" and "conditional" without any analyses
as to why they are used in both types of the causal relations. Also, because is only
mentioned under the reversal causal, while it can also signal other subtypes of the causal
relations such as forward. Because there are no specific criteria for classifying the subtypes
of the causal relations in the Hallidayan framework, it is difficult to tell the difference
between the "general" and "specific causal" or between "reversal" and "specific causal".
That is, Halliday and Hasan did not provide definitions for each subtype of the causal
relations, therefore the classification needed modification. The modified classification I
advance here takes into account two further aspects of the causal relations; first, the order
of the combined segments S1 and S2 in the text, second, the semantico-pragmatic contents
of the segments and the position of the connectives within those segments; i.e., whether
they occur in the initial position of S1 or S2. As a result, a more specific definition is
provided for each new sub-type of the causal-conditional relations used to classify the data
here.

Regarding textual patterns, Trabasso et al state that "readers construct a coherent
representation of text that is primarily driven by an intuitive expectation of satisfying
cause-effect relations" (1984: 108). In this regard, translators need to be aware that causal
relations are not signalled only by connectives in English, but also they might be signalled
by verbs like cause or lead. Although Kurdish does not have verbs that signal a causal
relation, there are constituents in the nominal group in Kurdish sentences that can signal
causal relations such as hokari... (the cause of...). In order to create clear boundaries for the
project in this thesis, the categorisation of the causal connectives in both languages will only focus on the explicitly signalled causal relations, i.e., where causal connectives do exist. It is the presence of the causal connective that marks the direction of the cause and effect segments in the text, which in turn is an important characteristic for dividing the subtypes of the causal and conditional relations. Nonetheless, the context surrounding the connective plays its role in recognising the relation as well.

Since the contexts in which the causal connectives occur play an important role in classification of the causal relations, the current study argues, in accordance with Iten (1997), that König’s (1989) claim of the existence of "a relation of duality" between adversative and causal connectives is not entirely true. According to König, any interpretation of the causal connectives like because also provides a description of the adversative connectives as although. This claim is also made by Halliday and Hasan (1976) as they state "therefore has the same potentialities as however". However, according to the principles of Relevance Theory, the context surrounding the connectives plays a vital role in recognising the relation being signalled by the connective. The translation data in the current study along with the data from English opinion articles suggest that there were no occasions where causal connectives with adversative connectives could be substituted for each other. This context-dependence leaves no room for the claim of the relation of duality between because and although, or other causal and adversative connectives.

Another problem with the Hallidayan framework of the causal-conditional relations and connectives is that they do not consider the position of the connectives in the text as they state "it is outside our scope here to go into the various positions that can be occupied by these items in the sentence." (1976: 256). However, the data from English and Kurdish opinion articles, and the translation data received from the Kurdish translators in the current thesis suggest that the connective’s position can also play an important role in recognising the specific sub-type of the causal-conditional relations. Therefore, the shift of the position of the connective would affect the iconicity of the relation. For instance, some connectives like because, since; çünké and leber ewei can only occur in the cause segment in the text, whereas other connectives like so, therefore, kewate and bo eway can only occur with the effect part of the text. The same restrictions exist in the conditional relations; if, eger, unless and meger can only occur with the condition part of the text, while otherwise and eger na can only occur with the result part of the text. Consequently,
the shift of the position of the connectives from initial position of S1 to S2 and vice versa would change the iconicity of the relation; whether iconic or non-iconic.

In conclusion, taking into account the issues with the Hallidayan framework of causal relations and solutions provided according to the principles of Relevance Theory, the current chapter divides the causal-conditional relations in English and Kurdish into four sub-categories which are:

- **Iconic causal relation** (S1 cause- S2 effect)
- **Non-iconic causal relation** (S1 effect- S2 cause)
- **Iconic conditional** (S1 condition- S2 result)
- **Non-iconic conditional** (S1 result- S2 condition)

This classification is based on the order of segments S1 and S2 and the semantico-pragmatic status of the segments; whether they are cause-effect or condition-result and the position of the connectives; whether in an initial position of S1 or S2. The modified classification shows the specific characteristics of each connective, such as the order of the segments they allow, their position in the text, and whether they pose challenges in translation. For instance, the comparison between the English connective *because* and the Kurdish causal connective *çûnke* showed that *because* is more flexible than *çûnke* in terms of position in the text; initial position of S1 and S2, whereas *çûnke* can only occur in the initial position of S2. However, both of them signal both subtypes of the causal relations; iconic and non-iconic.

**Table 8** A modified classification of causal-conditional relations in English and Kurdish

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Relation</th>
<th>Subtypes</th>
<th>English Connectives</th>
<th>Frequency out of 38572 tokens</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Kurdish Connectives</th>
<th>Frequency out of 36988 tokens</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Causal-Conditional</td>
<td>Iconic causal</td>
<td><em>because</em></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.007</td>
<td><em>leber ewei</em></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>so</em></td>
<td>28</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td><em>kewate</em></td>
<td>32</td>
<td>0.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>then</em></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>therefore</em></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.007</td>
<td><em>leber ewe</em></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

154
Table 8 outlines the paradigm of correspondences between the English and Kurdish conditional connectives according to the data from English and Kurdish opinion articles and the translation data received from the Kurdish translators. The detailed analysis of the connectives that signal causal-conditional relations is provided in the sections 6.2, 6.3, 6.4, and 6.5 in the current chapter.
6.1 The link between Causal and Conditional relations

Previous research concerned with the causal-conditional relations like Halliday and Hasan (1976), Cummins et al (1991) and Beller (2006) group the two subtypes of the causal relations (causal and conditional) together and classify them under the general heading of causal relations. Halliday and Hasan state that the two sub-relations "are closely related, linguistically; where the causal means ‘a, therefore b’ the conditional means ‘possibly a; if so, then b’, and although the ‘then’ and the therefore’ are not logically equivalent – a may entail b without being its cause - they are largely interchangeable as cohesive forms" (1976: 256). Nonetheless, there are distinctive characteristics by which they are recognised as two independent subtypes of the causal connectives. One of these characteristics would be the semantico-pragmatic status of the segments, such as S1 cause S2 effect or S1 condition, S2 result. According to Paul (2004), a significant distinction between conditional and causal relations is that "the statements of causality need the antecedent to precede or coincide with the consequent in time, while conditional relations do not need this temporal order" (p. 218). The alleged overlap between these two types of relations arises from the fact that many different causal relations in English may be paraphrased using "if a, then b" (Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 260). Another claim on the overlap between causal and conditional relations is seen in Warchal's (2010: 143) description of the conditional clause:

The conditional clause typically conveys a condition which, if fulfilled, ensures the truth of the proposition in the main clause. The central issue in such direct conditions is then the relationship between the main and the subordinate clause, as the former expresses a situation that is contingent on that expressed by the latter. Content conditionals are the only group of conditional clauses where the ideational function clearly prevails, although in the case of hypotheticals the interpersonal meaning seems to co-occur with the content function.

One of the reasons for the ambiguity and the overlap between these two relations is that conditionals in everyday English are usually freely used to describe a general situation. For instance, consider the conditional relation in example 1.
1) **If** Democrats retake the House in 2012 [...] and hold the Senate and White House, **then** they can sit down and take this all apart again.\(^{111}\)

The text in example 1 relates an endless number of possible events. That is, for any specific statement that counts as "Democrats retaking the senate and White House" some specific statement counts as "they can control the US politics"- the latter fact depends on the existence of the former one. This general statement would be false if there is any chance where the Democrats win the elections and they are still not able to control the politics. However, the "If..., then..." statement in logic typically relates two specific facts. The first specific fact would be Democrats winning or not winning the elections and the second being they can or cannot control the politics. Thus, the conditional relation relates to specific facts only, and the order of the logical statement should be "A implies B", i.e., A is the specific condition of B. Therefore, the conditional relations are signalled by connectives of condition which outline or suggest the specific conditions under which something happens or something is the case.

Another aspect of the conditional relations is linked to the connectives that describe the ultimate consequence of a certain condition like otherwise and then. In this regard, Moreno states that "the relation of cause and effect is still present, even though in more hypothetical manner" (2009: 582). Among the connectives that introduce conditions in the causal relation, there are two types; on the one hand, the connectives that introduce unconditional consequences, and on the other hand, the connectives that introduce conditional consequences. The textual sequence in the former case would be a, therefore b as in example 2 and the latter would be possibly a; if so, then b as in example 3.

2) They are unwilling to compromise; **therefore** they are unable to negotiate.\(^{112}\)

3) **If** the shape of politics changes, **then** this deal will change.\(^{113}\)

In example 2, the connective introduces an unconditional consequence in S2 that has actually occurred as a result of a particular state in S1, whereas in example 3, the connective in S2 introduces a consequence that depends on a condition being realised in

---


S1. The types of connectives occurring in cases as in example 3 are supported by the semantic value of *if*.

The proximity between the causal and conditional relations has caused the overlap between them and could lead translators to mistranslate these items. For example, in the responses returned by the translators, they used *meger* as an equivalent for *since*, but there is no causal use of *meger* in the Kurdish data. However, the distinction between them can be made if the notion of condition is taken into consideration when dealing with causally related segments. That is, all conditional relations involve some degree of causality, but not all causally related segments imply conditions. That is because "a conditional relation is a logical relation in which the illocutionary act employing one of a pair of propositions is expressed or implied to be true or in force if the other proposition is true" (Johnson-Laird, 1977: 193). The difference between the causal relations and the conditional ones resides in the fact that in case of a causal relation the textual segments comprise of a cause and its effect, whereas in case of a conditional relation the textual segments include a condition and its consequence.

**6.2 Causal relations**

Causal relations can be divided into two subtypes within this study, these being the iconic causal relation, in which the order of the segments in the text is S1 cause S2 effect and the non-iconic causal relation, in which the order of the segments is S1 effect, S2 cause. The iconicity of the relation incorporates other secondary characteristics as well, such as the semantico-pragmatic status of the segments and the position of the connective within these segments. These characteristics are explained in the framework of Relevance Theory as constraints, on the order of the segments, which means that the cause should precede the effect in the iconic causal relations, and also, the constraints on the position of connectives, where some connectives like *because* are more flexible than connectives like *for*. That is, the connective *because* can occur in both positions; initial position of S1 and S2. However, the type of the causal relation in case of position shift would change accordingly. For instance, when *because* occurs in the initial position of S1, it signals an iconic causal relation, as the order of the segments would become S1 cause, S2 effect. On the other hand, when *because* occurs in the initial position of S2, it signals a non-iconic causal relation, because the order of the text would become S1 effect, S2 cause (See section 6.3).
### 6.2.1 Iconic causal relation

As mentioned earlier, the iconic causal relation is a sub-type of the causal relations, in which the order of the causality is "iconic" (Sanders et al, 1992: 3), i.e., the form of the text is S1 cause, S2 effect. Typical examples of the iconic causal connectives include *because, so, therefore, thus* in English and the Kurdish counterparts include *çûnke, kewate, leber ewei, takû.*

**Because (çûnke, leber ewei)**

The English connective *because* is regarded as the typical causal connective by researchers like Mann and Thompson, 1987, 1988; Hobbs, 1985; Sanders et al., 1992; Knott and Dale, 1994). It is one of the causal connectives that can signal both subtypes of the causal relations, namely iconic and non-iconic. However, its position in the text is constrained by the relation it signals. For instance, it has to be in the initial position of S1 in order to signal an iconic causal relation, as illustrated in example 4, whereas its position is confined to the initial position of S2 when signalling a non-iconic causal relation (See section 6.3 non-iconic *because*). Nevertheless, the data from the English opinion articles suggested that the use of iconic *because* is not as popular as the use of a non-iconic because, as out of 46 occurrences of *because* there was only one example of an iconic *because*, as in example 4.

**Because S1, S2**

4) **Because** love is the opposite of hate, the most fraternal of communities can become the most murderous. 114

**Leber ewei** xoşewistî pêçewanei rqlêbûneweye, ew komełgayanei peiwendî brayaneyan le nêwanda heye lewaneye bibne bkwžtrîn komełga.

In terms of Relevance Theory, *because* constrains the order of the segments in the text depending to its position in the text; whether initial position of S1 or S2. So, the procedure of an iconic because would be segments 1 restricted to cause and thus S2 is effect, as in example 4.

---

The translation data in the current study has shown that 14 translators out of 32 chose leber ewei and çûnke as equivalences for because. That is an indication that çûnke and leber ewei can be used interchangeably. However, leber ewei was chosen as the sole equivalent for the non-iconic because by 18 translators out of 32, while çûnke and leber ewei were both chosen as equivalents for; iconic and non-iconic 14 translators. This shows that çûnke is not as flexible as leber ewei nor as flexible as because in terms of its position in the text. That is, çûnke is by default restricted to initial position of S2 in Kurdish texts. Therefore, çûnke cannot be used as an equivalent for an iconic because. Consequently, if we wanted to use çûnke as an equivalent for because in example 4, the order of the segments has to be changed to S1 effect, S2 cause, as the following.

*Çûnke xoşewistî pêçewanei rqlêbûneweye, ew komelgayanei peiwendi brayaneyan le nêwanda heye lewaneye bibne bkwžtrîn komelga. Ew komelgayanei peiwendi brayaneyan le nêwanda heye lewaneye bibne bkwžtrîn komelga, çûnke xoşewistî pêçewanei rqlêbûneweye. (Back Translation)

Those communities that have fraternal relations can become the most murderous ones, because love is the opposite of hate.

The above example suggests that the position of çûnke in Kurdish texts is restricted to the initial position of S2. Therefore, the order of the segments needs to be S1 effect S2 cause. Consequently, the causal relation signalled by çûnke would be a non-iconic one (See section 6.3 çûnke). Therefore, leber ewei was chosen as the most suitable equivalence for an iconic because, as it can occur in the initial position of S1 as well as the initial position of S2.

leber ewei

The Kurdish causal connective leber ewei is in mentioned by Shwani (2003: 71) as an "Amrazi Geyener" (subordinating particle). In his research, leber ewei is recognised solely as a grammatical entity that contributes to the cohesion between two immediate sentences. In addition, it introduces a causal subordinate clause. However, he does not explain what specific type of causal relation is signalled by leber ewei. Moreover, Shwani (2003) does
not analyse data gathered from real-world usage. The Kurdish data in the current study suggests that *leber ewei* signals causal relations between two segments, and that it is flexible in terms of its position in the text. Therefore, it can signal both subtypes of the causal relations: iconic and non-iconic. This section will only deal with the iconic *leber ewei*. The translation data in the current study showed that all the iconic occurrences were translated into English as *because*. For instance, consider example 5.

5) *Leber ewei* ŋoli gringi le berprsyariatîda binîwe weku take kesêk, debê geştîn bûn be helbêrdnî beřêzyan bo em poste.\textsuperscript{115}

*Because* CONJ role-POSS important-3S in accountability seen-has-3S-AGR as single person, must optimistic be-1P with electing-POSS 3S-POSS-excellency for PREP this DEM post.

*Because* he has proven to be a responsible individual, we should be optimistic with him being elected for this post.

The data from the opinion articles and the translation data suggested that there is a great deal of similarity between *leber ewei* and *because* in terms of their characteristics as connectives and potential for signalling causal relation. That is, both of them are flexible in their position in the text; occurring in the initial position of S1 as well as the initial position of S2.

*So*

The connective *so* can be regarded as one of the multifunctional connectives because it signals different relations according to context and mode. As the current study is limited to the analysis of written text types, I should state that not all the different meanings signalled by *so* are considered in this study. Only those occurrences of *so* that signal a *causal* relation are considered for analysis. According to Halliday and Hasan, *so* can signal "all three subtypes of the causal relations", namely "result, reason and purpose" (1976: 256). That is, *so* can be interpreted into all the three meanings, based on the context, such as, "as a result of this, for this reason and for this purpose" (Ibid, 1976: 257). As far as the position

\textsuperscript{115} Editorial, 15/02/2012, \url{http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=13426&z=4&l=1}
of so is concerned, so only occurs in the initial position of S2. The semantico-pragmatic status of the segments is that S2 is restricted to effect, because so can only occur with the effect segment of the text. Therefore, S1 is restricted to the cause segment. Thus, in terms of the framework of Relevance Theory, the form of the text in which so operates is restricted to S1 cause, S2 effect, as in example 6:

S1. So S2

6) Republicans, who seem more intent on hammering the poor than nailing the deficit, only want to slash spending. So Boehner went back to Republicans with a cuts-only plan that would raise the ceiling for a short while and then force another deadline next year.116

Fraser (1999) labels so as an "inferential marker" because it leads the reader to infer that S2 should be taken as a conclusion based on what is presented in S1. For instance, S2 in example 6 implies a conclusion that "Boehner" was obliged to present a "cuts-only plan", based on the statement "Republicans only want to slash spending" in S1. Consequently, so signals an iconic causal relation, as the conclusion presented S2 is an effect for a cause presented in S1. The order of the segments in example 6 is S1 cause. So S2 effect. In English, the connective then functions in a similar way to so and both of them are translated into Kurdish as kewate.

then

Similar to so, the English connective then is polysemous, as it can signal temporal and causal relations depending on the context. However, the translation data showed that then is not problematic in translation, because the different types of the relations it signals are closely attributed to the context. For example, when signalling a temporal relation, it is translated into Kurdish as paşan (See Chapter Seven, paşan); whereas when it signals a causal relation it is translated into Kurdish as kewate. Its position in the text is restricted to initial position of S2, and it occurs with the effect segment in the text only. Therefore, the order of the segments where then operates is restricted to S1 cause, S2 effect, as in examples 7 and 8.

**If S1, then S2**

7) *If* the Republicans win the White House, Senate and House –more likely– in 2012, *then* they can do what they like and this deal won't preclude them from doing anything differently.\(^{117}\)

**Unless S1, then S2**

8) *Unless* their authority is absolute in the classroom, *then* they cannot teach and children cannot learn.\(^{118}\)

The data from the English opinion articles showed that the connective *then* can co-occur with other connectives like *if* and *unless*, as in examples 7 and 8. This suggests that not only does *then* signal the causal and temporal relations, it also signals the conditional relation. Halliday and Hasan state that *then* may introduce a statement which is constrained by the presence of what comes previously, but it is not the cause of it; the meaning of then will be "under these circumstances" (1976: 258). In a Relevance Theoretic point of view, this constraint fits into the procedure that: q may entail p without being its cause (See section 6.4 *then*).

The polysemy and multifunctionality of *then* could pose challenges in translation into Kurdish. For instance, Wali (2004) confuses the two relations that are signalled by *then*. Wali seeks an equivalent for *then* in Kurdish and he comes up with the connective "*inca*", stating that it combines two sentences to signal a *causal* relation between two grammatical units (2004: 174). However, the translation data in the current study showed that *inca* signals a temporal relation and not a *causal* one. The equivalent of *then* when signalling a causal relation is actually *kewate*, as suggested by the Kurdish translators. Wali’s confusion is perhaps caused by the fact that he has not depended on any empirical examples of the connectives as they occur in Kurdish; he only analysed examples of his own creation based upon his intuitions as a native Kurdish speaker.

---


**kewate (so, then)**

According to the data from Kurdish opinion articles and the translation data, *kewate* solely signals an iconic causal relation, and it is translated into English as *so* and *then* according to its context. Similar to the characteristics of *so* and *then*, *Kewate* only occurs in the initial position of S2 and never the initial position of S1. However, it is never found to accompany another connective, as *then* does and it does not signal more than one type of relation, as *so* does. The most significant feature of *kewate* is that it always occupies the initial position of S2 and that S2 in this case is usually an effect for an action or cause mentioned in S1. For example, consider example 9.

9) Desełat xoy be xaweni ew mežûe dezanê ke emfûy dirûst kirdûe, **kewate** berpırsi yekemişe beramber be parastını destkewtekani ew mežûe.\(^\text{119}\)

*Authority 1S-POSS withPREP owner-POSS thisDEM history-is knowing that today-3S-AGR made done-1S, soCONJ responsible first-1S-is opposite withPREP protecting achievements-POSS thisDEM history.*

The Authorities state that they own the history that made this day. **So / Then**, they should have the sole responsibility in preserving its achievements.

The translation data in the current study suggested that *kewate* signals an iconic causal relation as in example 8. That is because the order of the segments is S1 cause S2 effect.

**therefore**

The English connective *therefore* is similar to those connectives that only occur with the effect segment of the text. The data from the Kurdish opinion articles suggested that the position of *therefore* in the text is restricted to the initial position of S2. Therefore, it signals an iconic causal relation. Moreover, in Relevance Theory, the presence of *therefore* in the initial position of S2 restricts the order of the segments to S1 cause S2 effect. Consequently, the procedure in which *therefore* operates is usually S1 is a supported assumption and therefore introduces a conclusion S2, based on the assumed cause presented previously, as shown in examples 10 and 11.

\(^{119}\) Margayee, S. 07/03/2012, [http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=13807&z=4&l=1](http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=13807&z=4&l=1)
S1, *therefore* S2

10) They are unwilling to compromise, and *therefore* they are unable to negotiate.\(^\text{120}\)

S1. *Therefore* S2

11) Oddest of all, on September 8, when Maurice Kirk appeared in court to assist, in front of yet another judge new to the case, the solicitor for the children’s guardian alleged that Mr Kirk was secretly recording the proceedings and furthermore that he was not Mr Kirk but Mr Randall-Joliffe, who had already been excluded from the court when she was present. *Therefore*, the judge ordered Mr Kirk’s arrest and he was marched off to a police cell.\(^\text{121}\)

The use of *therefore* in examples 10 and 11 is used to guide the reader's interpretation process by specifying certain properties of the context, and the contextual effects. So, the S1s in examples 10 and 11 are specifications of the context to lead the reader to link them with their S2s through the use of *therefore*. In this regard, Milton and Tsang claim that it will be a misuse of *therefore* if "therefore is used to force a conclusion from unsupported assumption" (1993: 230). Thus, it is logical to say that *therefore* constrains the relevant context for the interpretation of a textual segment, reinforcing some inferences or eliminating other possible ones and thus helps the reader process the information. A similar causal connective in English would be *consequently*.

*consequently*

The causal connective *consequently* is a straightforward expression that could only signal a causal relation between S1 and S2, the reason being that it consists of the word: *consequent*. According to Fraser, *consequently* is an inferential marker as it "signals that S2 is to be taken as a conclusion based on S1" (1999: 948). The claim of "initiality" of connectives which suggests that connectives should occupy the initial position of a text, in this case initial position of S1, does not seem to apply to *consequently*, because it is always found in S2 and never in the initial position of S1 (cf. Halliday and Hasan, 1976; Schiffrin

\(^{120}\) Younge, G. 31/07/2011 [http://www.guardian.co.uk/commentisfree/2011/jul/31/us-reckless-right-forgot-participation](http://www.guardian.co.uk/commentisfree/2011/jul/31/us-reckless-right-forgot-participation)

\(^{121}\) Booker, Ch. 17/09/2011 [http://www.telegraph.co.uk/comment/columnists/christopherbooker/8771232/Couple-denied-legal-help-while-lawyers-make-1m-removing-their-children.html](http://www.telegraph.co.uk/comment/columnists/christopherbooker/8771232/Couple-denied-legal-help-while-lawyers-make-1m-removing-their-children.html)
The restriction on the position of *consequently* constrains the order of the segments to S1 cause, S2 effect, because it only occurs with the effect segment in the text, as in example 12.

S1. *Consequently* S2

12) He explained that the foreign parakeets nested in holes in trees. His theory was that this habit was displacing native Noctule Bats who also liked to roost in trees. *Consequently* Noctule Bat numbers are decreasing.

In example 12, *consequently* presents the effect S2 that is caused by a process in S1. The type of the causal relation in these cases would be the iconic causal relation. The best equivalent for *consequently* in Kurdish is *boye* as proposed by 20 out of 32 Kurdish translators.

*boye (consequently)*

The Kurdish word *boye* is merely recognized as a connective in Kurdish research. Among the few studies on "Amrazi lêkder" (conjunction particles) are Shwani, 2003; Ferhadi, 2003; Tofiq, 2002 and Wali, 2004. They mention *boye* as a subordinator that introduces a cause, without referring to the specific type of the causal relation that it signals. They do not recognise its signalling potentials in terms of the semantic relations. However, the translation data in the current study suggested that *boye* is in fact a causal connective and it signals an iconic causal relation, as it was translated into English as *consequently* by 20 out of 32 translators.

13) Qeiran nebûe belkû drûstkrawe behoy hendê hokar w karigeri ke kardanewei debê beser komelge, *boye* peiwendi ṭastewxo lenêwan qeiran w komelge heye.

*Crisis notNEG-been-13 butCONJ make-being-done-3S-AGR because-POSS some factors and impacts that reflections will-have-3P-AGR onPREP society,*

---


Crisis has not been existent but it was created because of unsolved issues that have negative reflections on the society. *Consequently*, there is an obvious relation between crisis and society.

The use of *boye* in the Kurdish data in example 13 confirms that it signals an iconic causal relation. The order of the segments is S1 *cause* S2 *effect*. Although Wali recognises *boye* as a "causal conjunctive particle", he does not state what specific type of the *causal* relations it signals and neither does he give an example to show how it is used in Kurdish texts (2004: 174). However, applying the principles of Relevance Theory to *boye*, it was obvious that *boye* signals the iconic causal relation in Kurdish texts, as it constrains the order of the segments to S1 *cause*, S2 *effect*.

*thus*

Similar to *consequently*, the causal connective *thus* can signal the iconic causal relation between S1 and S2. It constrains the order of the segments to S1 *cause*, S2 *effect*, and it only occurs with the effect segment in English texts. Moreover, it is a member of the "inferential markers" described by Fraser (1999: 948). That is, in Relevance Theoretic terms, *thus* helps the reader to take S2 as a conclusion depending on what has been put forward in S1, as in example 14.

S1. *Thus* S2

14) The cheerful neighbourliness between the (religious) communities – which is the glory of Lebanon – becomes its hell. *Thus* the Lebanese civil war was a crime of passion.\(^{124}\)

In example 14, *thus* implies a conclusion based on the facts presented in S1. This procedure, according to the Relevance Theoretic approach, constrains the conclusion in S2 to be exclusively based on the fact(s) presented in S1. In this respect, *thus* is confined to

the initial position of S2, as shown in example 14. This suggests that Wali has mistakenly translated *thus* into Kurdish as "wekû", and he has not provided an example to demonstrate it (2004: 169). That is to say, *wekû* is actually not a *causal* connective, but it is an exemplifier, which is similar to English *like* or *such as*. The translation data in the current study showed that the Kurdish equivalent for *thus* in this case is *bew şêweye*, as chosen by 24 out of 32 translators.

*bew şêweye (thus)*

Based on the similarity of the procedure implemented to interpret the meaning of *bew şêweye* and its translation into English, it is found to be the most suitable equivalent for *thus*. The Kurdish connective *bew şêweye* has not been mentioned in any Kurdish research. However, the contexts in which it is found and based on its translation, it is to be recognized as a causal connective which signals the iconic causal relation, as in example 15.

15) Baştırd waye pıtır le yek kandiid deştışanbërêt bo her postêki wezarî w seroki hékûmet serpişk bërêt bo helbêrdni yekîan, *bew şêweye* hawkari serok hékûmet dekrêt ta serkewtûbêt le erkekeîda.125

It is better to have more than one nominee for ministerial posts and the head of the government should be free to choose one of them. Thus, the head of the government would be assisted in order to be successful in fulfilling his duties.

The order of the segments in the text presented in example 15 is S1 cause, S2 effect. This order of the segments is also constrained by the presence of *bew şêweye* in the initial position of S2. That is because *bew şêweye* only occurs with the effect segment in Kurdish texts. The procedure implemented in example 15 is that *bew şêweye* presents a conclusion.

---

125 Barzinji, S. 15/02/2012, [http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=13426&z=4&l=1](http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=13426&z=4&l=1)
S2, based on what has been put forward in S1. Depending on the procedure in which *bew şêweye* operates and its translation into English as *thus*, it is logical to state that *bew şêweye* is a Kurdish causal connective, and that it signals the iconic causal relation. The translation data also verifies that *bew şêweye* is the most suitable equivalent for English *thus*, as suggested by 24 out of 32 translators.

**in order to**

The English connective *in order to* is similar to *because* in terms of its characteristics and functions in English texts. It is one of the flexible causal connectives that can occur in the initial position of S1 or the initial position of S2. Also, the data from the English opinion articles suggested that it only occurs with the effect segment of the text. Therefore, the order of the segments would be S1 cause, S2 effect when it occurs in the initial position of S2 and the type of the relation being signalled in this case would be the iconic causal relation, as in example 16. However, if *in order to* occurred in the initial position of S1 the order of the segments would change to S1 effect S2 cause, and in this case the type of the relation would become a non-iconic causal relation (See section 6.3 *in order to*).

S1, *in order to* S2

16) The chancellor believed that they had to lay out a robust plan to reduce the deficit, including specified cuts, *in order to* look credible to the financial markets and the electorate.\(^{126}\)

In terms of the framework of Relevance Theory, *in order to* constrains the order of the segments in example 16 to S1 cause, S2 effect. Thus the relation signaled in example 16 is an iconic causal relation. The translation data in the current study suggested that the most suitable equivalent for *in order to* in Kurdish is *bo ewei*, because 23 out of 32 translators translated *in order to* as *bo ewei*.

**bo ewei (in order to)**

The data from the Kurdish opinion articles showed that the causal connective *bo ewei* is very similar to the English *in order to*, because it is flexible in its position in the text, i.e., it could occur in both positions; initial position of S1 or S2. Also it only occurs with the effect segment in Kurdish texts. The translation data showed that the constraints on the

order of the segments which apply to the phrase, in order to, also applies to bo ewei. That is, bo ewei could signal both subtypes of the causal relations. It can signal a non-iconic causal relation when it occurs in the initial position of S1 (See section 6.3 bo ewei). When it occurs in the initial position of S2, it constrains the order of the segments to S1 cause, S2 effect, and in such case it signals an iconic causal relation, as in example 17.

S1, bo ewei S2

17) Em ğewşe pêwistî be yekêti hêzekani Kurdistan w yekêti helwêste bo ewei bibe te fakterêki fšari kariger leser deselati Bexda. 127

ThisDEM situation need-3S-AGR with unity of powers-DEF-ART-POSS Kurdistan and unity-POSS action in order toCONJ make-would-3S-be factor-INDF-ART influential onPREP authority-POSS Baghdad.

This situation needs the unity of all parties and the unity of action, in order to use it as a pressure card on Baghdad authority.

The translation data and the data from the Kurdish opinion articles suggest that there is interesting similarity between the two connectives bo ewei and in order to. Both connectives exhibit similar characteristics and they were chosen as the most suitable equivalences for each other in English and Kurdish. Depending on the order of the segments bo ewei, like in order to, signals both subtypes of the causal relation. In the case of example 17, it signals an iconic causal relation, because it constrains the order of the segments to S1 cause S2 effect, as it occurred in the initial position of S2, because bo ewei only occurs with the effect segment in Kurdish texts.

takû (so that)

Takû is mentioned in several Kurdish studies as an "Amrazi Geyener" (subordinating particle) (cf. Shwani, 2003 and Tofiq, 2002). These seem to have paid less attention to its functions as a causal connective and they mostly describe takû as "linking a subordinate clause to a main one in terms of time succession" (Shwani, 2003: 58). The only reference to takû as signalling a causal relation is by Tofiq (2002), in which he suggests that takû

127 Ahmad, K. 31/05/2011, http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=8945&z=4&l=1
"links a subordinate clause to the main one, in which the subordinate clause is usually a cause" (2002: 98). This indicates that these studies of the Kurdish language were only interested in the grammatical functions of takû, and that therefore they only explored the grammatical relations signalled by this connective. The current study, however, examines the specific semantic relation that takû signals and how it is translated into English. The data from the Kurdish opinion articles showed that takû signals an iconic causal relation in Kurdish texts because it constrains the order of the segments to S1 cause S2 effect as illustrated in example 18.

S1, takû S2

18) Baskîrdînî qeiran le řageyandenda debê dûrbêt le helmeti nawzînden w přwpagendei nadrûst, takû kari řageyanden dûrbêt le xoderxîsten w kari mizajî. 128

*Mention-doing-3S crisis inPREP media shouldCOND-be far from campaign-POSS name-abuse and propaganda noneNEG-true, so thatCONJ work-POSS media far-shouldCOND-be-3S-AGR from self-showing and work-POSS mood.*

Reports on crises should be far from slandering people and false propaganda, *so that* journalism should be free from subjectivity and imposing one's ideas.

The most significant characteristic of takû is that it has more than one allomorph that are used to signal the same relation, for example ta and tawekû. These two allomorphs are not very common in written genres, but they are often found in spoken contexts, but there was no occurrence for either of them in the opinion articles. The council of the Kurdish Academia stated that this variation is "caused by the overlap between the Central Kurdish Dialects" (Kurdish Academia, 2009: 210). Moreover, the substitution test verifies that if takû is replaced by either of ta or tawekû, there will be no change of the type of the relation being signalled, and neither would there be any change of the order of the segments in the text. Also, the translation data showed that takû can signal two different categories of the conjunctive relations (either the causal or temporal relation); depending on the context (see Chapter Seven takû).

In terms of the framework of Relevance Theory, takû, when functioning as a causal connective, constrains the order of the segments to S1 cause, S2 effect, and it only occurs with the effect segment, i.e., it only occurs in the initial position of S2. Therefore, it signals an iconic causal relation, as in example 18.

*since*

The English connective *since* is also one of the flexible *causal* connectives that can occur in both initial position of S1 and initial position of S2. Also, it only occurs with the cause segment in English text, similar to *because*. So, its position in the text would determine the order of the segments; therefore it will specify the type of the causal relation it signals. For instance, if it occurred in the initial position of S2, it would signal a non-iconic causal relation (See section 6.3 *since*). When it occurs in the initial position of S1, it signals an *iconic causal* relation, as it constrains the order of the segments to S1 cause, S2 effect, as shown in example 19.

*Since* S1, S2

19) *Since* the bill would have had to be approved by the Democratic-controlled Senate and Obama before it could become law, it would have stood absolutely no chance of success.  

The translation data in the current study suggested that *since* can be substituted by *because* and it would signal a similar relation depending to its position in the text. That is why *since* can also be regarded as an "inferential marker" (Blakemore, 1987: 68), i.e., it helps the reader to make inferences. Also, in terms of the procedure implemented in the case of *since* as an iconic connective, it is always S1 cause and S2 effect. Based on the procedures in which *since* operates as a causal connective and the translation data, the most suitable equivalence for this connective in Kurdish is *behoy ewei*.

*behoy ewei* (*since*)

Among the existing Kurdish studies there is no reference to the *causal* connective *behoy ewei*. Nonetheless, example 19 shows that translation can be utilized to determine the functions of connectives as it shows that *behoy ewei* is the most suitable Kurdish equivalent for the English *causal* connective *since*. Moreover, *behoy ewei* can also function

---

to signal a non-iconic causal relation, given that it can also occur in the initial position of S2 as well (See Section 6.3 behoy ewei). When signalling an iconic causal relation behoy ewei occurs in the initial position of S1 and constrains the order of the segments to S1 cause, S2 effect, as in example 20.

**Behoy ewei S1, S2**

20) **Behoy ewei** kûşten w koçpêkirdeni kurdewle le nawçekani Sa’diye w Jelewla w Qeretepe berdewame, peñelemi Kurdistan hatedeng.\(^{130}\)

*Because of* CONJ killing and migration-POSS Kurds inPREP areas-DEF-ART-POSS Sa’diye and Jalawla and Qeretepe continuing-3S-AGR-is, Parliament-POSS Kurdistan came-to-sound.

Since Killing Kurds and their fleeing Sa’diye, Jalawla and Qeretepe continued, the Kurdistan Parliament had an announcement to support them.

When behoy ewei occurs in the initial position of S1, as in example 20, it constrains S1 to be the cause and therefore S2 to be the effect. That is because behoy ewei only occurs with the cause segment in Kurdish texts.

*as long as*

The use of *as long as* in English is to help the reader formulate a qualification scale for the effect in S1 by introducing a cause in S2 or vice versa. That is, *as long as* is also a flexible connective in terms of its position in the text, as it could occur either in the initial position of S1 or S2. Also, like *because* and *since*, it only occurs with the cause segment in English texts. Therefore, when occurring in the initial position of S2, it signals a non-iconic causal relation (See section 6.3 *as long as*), and when it occurs in the initial position of S1, it signals an iconic causal relation. In the latter case the order of the segments in the text would be S1 cause S2 effect, as shown in example 21.

As long as S1, S2

21) **As long as** the killers are alive – however old they are, however long ago their crimes were committed – justice would seem to be served by punishment.¹³¹

The procedure implemented in example 21 is that S1 is restricted to cause and S2 is effect. That is because *as long as* only occurs with the cause segment in English texts and it occurs in the initial position of S1. The translation data in the current study suggested that the most suitable equivalence for *as long as* in Kurdish is *hetakû*, based on its context.

**hetakû (as long as)**

*Hetakû* has never been mentioned in Kurdish studies. However, based on the procedures in which it operates and its position in the text, the current study suggests that *hetakû* can signal both subtypes of the causal relations, namely iconic and non-iconic. The translation data also confirmed that the most suitable equivalence for *hetakû* in English is *as long as*, as suggested by 17 out of 32 translators. Both connectives exhibit similar functions in the text. When *hetakû* occurs in the initial position of S1, the order of the segments would become S1 cause S2 effect, as in example 22.

**Hetakû** S1, S2

22) Wtman: *Hetakû* (feşl) krawekan negeɾênewe dewam bo zanko, ême berdewam debîn leser baikot krdnî xwendn.¹³²

*Said-1P: as long asCONJ expelled ones notNEG-coming back toPREP study forPREP University, we continue will-be-1P-AGR on boycott doing-POSS studying.*

We said: **As long as** the expelled students are not returned to University, we will continue boycotting lectures.

---


According to the principles of Relevance Theory, hetakû constrains the order of the segments to S1 cause S2 effect. Therefore, in this case hetakû signals an iconic causal relation.

6.2.2 Non-iconic causal relation

The second subtype of the causal relations in the modified classification of the causal relations is the non-iconic causal relation. As mentioned earlier, iconicity refers to the order of the segments in the text, i.e., the cause segment precedes the effect segment. However, the second sub-type of the causal relations refers to the order of segments in which the effect segment precedes the cause segment. This type of relation is referred to as the "non-iconic" causal relation (Moeschler, 2006: 243). In terms of the framework of Relevance Theory, the order of the segments in the non-iconic causal relation is restricted by the causal connectives to S1 effect S2 cause.

Because

According to Halliday and Hasan, because contributes to a "less usual form of cohesion" as the causal relation signalled by it, is not the common type; "b, because a" (1976: 257). Perhaps the abnormality of this type of relation is that it is usually more logical to know the cause of events before one can fully understand the consequence or effect. On the other hand, Blakemore considers because as an "inferential marker" that constrains the relevant context for the interpretation of a segment reinforcing some inferences (1987: 68). The current study suggests that because is a multifunctional and flexible connective. That is, it can signal both subtypes of the causal relations, because it can occur in both the initial position of S1 and the initial position of S2. In cases where because signals the non-iconic causal relation, it occurs in the initial position of S2, thus restricting the order of the segments to S1 effect S2 cause, as it only occurs with the cause segment in English texts, as illustrated in examples 23 and 24.
S1, *because* S2

23) Labour was thrown out of office principally *because* it was no longer trusted with money.\(^{133}\)

S1. *Because* S2

24) Yes, rain is the danger, even for a man in a wetsuit and immersed in the Thames. *Because* the sewers of London are no longer able to cope with their burden and pwooosh – the Bazalgette interceptors are discharged into the Thames, with consequences that simply cannot be ignored.\(^{134}\)

In terms of the principles of Relevance Theory, *because* puts a constraint on the order of the texts in examples 23 and 24, which is that S1 must be effect because S2 is the cause. This constraint is caused by the presence of *because* in the initial position of S2. Thus the relation signalled in both examples is the non-iconic causal relation.

The responses from the translators within the current study provided interesting findings regarding the translation of *because* into Kurdish. *Because* was translated into Kurdish as both *çûnke* and *leber ewei*. However, as a non-iconic causal connective, *because* was translated into *çûnke* rather than *leber ewei*. That is because *çûnke* is the typical non-iconic causal connective in Kurdish, as it can only occur in the initial position of S2 and never in the initial position of S1.

*çûnke* (*because*)

In terms of Relevance Theory, and according to its translation, *çûnke* is similar to *because*, due to functioning as an "inferential marker" (Moeschler, 2006: 242). However, the initiality claim made by researchers like Halliday and Hasan (1976) does not apply to the case of *çûnke*. The data from the Kurdish opinion articles suggested that *çûnke* can only occur in the initial position of S2 and never in the initial position of S1. Therefore, it can only signal the non-iconic causal relation, as the order of the segments with *çûnke* is usually S1 effect S2 cause, as in examples 25 and 26.


NotNEG possible journalist 3S-POSS mix-with investigation militant and security and detective shouldCOND-do-3S-AGR becauseCONJ thisDEM mixture make-would-do-3S-AGR in-between work-POSS media and works-DEF-ART-POSS other. Journalists should not get involved in militant, security and detective investigations, because it creates confusion between the duties of media and other duties.

The relations signalled in both examples 25 and 26 are the non-iconic causal relation. That is because çünke only occurs with the cause segment in Kurdish texts and its position is confined to the initial position of S2. Thus, the order of the segments is always S1 effect S2 cause. The translation data in the current study suggests that similar constraints on the
position of çûnke and the type of relation apply to the English causal connective for. That is why çûnke can also be translated into English as for. Sixteen out of 32 Kurdish translators gave both because and for as translation options for çûnke.

for

Halliday and Hasan point out that there is a very close similarity between for and because, claiming they could be "synonyms" of each other and realise the relation "a because b" (1976: 258). However, this similarity is true only if because functions as a non-iconic causal connective. The data from the English opinion articles suggested that for can only occur with the cause segment of the text and it can only occur in the initial position of S2. Therefore, it can only signal the non-iconic causal relation. Similarly, when because occurs in the initial position of S2, it signals the non-iconic causal relation, because it can only occur with the cause segment of the text and not the effect segment. Examples 27a and 27b illustrate the similarity between for and because via the substitution test.

S1. For S2

27a) We also have to see this in the round, though. For if we are to stand a chance of tackling the general sense of impunity in society, we need to make sure those involved in the original criminality at News International, and those who deliberately covered it up, don’t get away with it.137

27b) We also have to see this in the round, though. Because if we are to stand a chance of tackling the general sense of impunity in society, we need to make sure those involved in the original criminality at News International, and those who deliberately covered it up, don’t get away with it.

The relation signalled in both examples 27a and 27b is the non-iconic causal relation. That is, the procedure implemented in both texts is that S1 restricted to effect and S2 restricted to cause. The translation data also confirmed that for and because are very much similar to each other, because they were both translated into Kurdish as leber ewei. Thirteen out of 32 translators translated for and because into Kurdish as leber ewei.

137 Bryant, Ch. 18/08/2011, http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/commentators/chris-bryant-there-must-be-no-impunity-2339453.html
**Leber ewei (for, because)**

The Kurdish causal connective is in mentioned by Shwani (2003: 71) as an "Amrazi Geyener" (subordinating particle). In his research, *leber ewei* is recognized solely as a grammatical entity that contributes to the cohesion between two immediate sentences and introduces a *causal* subordinate clause. So, *leber ewei* was not researched in terms of its potential for signalling semantic relations. The data from the Kurdish opinion articles and the translation data in the current study suggest that *leber ewei* is a very similar connective to *because*, and all of the characteristics and properties of *because* apply to *leber ewei*. As a non-iconic causal connective, *leber ewei* restricts the order of the segments to *S1 effect S2 cause*, as in examples 28 and 29.

**S1 leber ewei S2**

28) Brakanman le Bexda hende nefam w dînde bûn ūrânë çendin kesyan dekûşt tenha **leber ewei** nawekei bedîli layenekei tir nebû.\(^{138}\)

*Brothers-DEF-ART-1P-POSS inPREP Baghdad so ignorant and savage were-3P daily many people were-killing-3P-AGR only forPREP name-3S-POSS with-heart-POSS side-DEF-ART other not-be-3P-AGR.*

Our brothers in Baghdad were such ignorant and brutal people that they were killing many people on daily basis, **for** they didn't like their names.

**S1. Leber ewei S2**

29) Ewei çaw be dařîştîni bûdcei emsali Ŧîkûmet w sałani pêšûda bigêrêt, hest be kêşêkani dekrêt. **Leber ewei** em jore aqîyete leser bnemai parei xoţai drûstdebêt...\(^{139}\)

*Any-person eye with distribution-POSS budget-POSS thisDEM-year-POSS government and years-POSS beforePREP would-catch, feel withPREP problems-DEF-ART-3S-POSS will-done-be-3S-AGR. BecauseCONJ thisDEM ideology on fundamentals-POSS money-POSS free form-would-be-3S-AGR.*


If any one looks at the government's budget plans for this year and the past years', the problems will be noticed. Because the ideology behind it is based on easy money.

Examples 28 and 29 verify that _leber ewei_ signals the non-iconic causal relation in Kurdish texts. The procedure implemented in both texts is that S1 is restricted to _effect_ and S2 is restricted to cause, because it contains _leber ewei_ and that _leber ewei_ only occurs with the cause segment in Kurdish texts. The translation data also verified that _leber ewei_ can be translated into English as _because_. Twenty-four out of 32 translators chose _because_ as the translation for _leber ewei_ in this context. Therefore, it can also be translated as _for_, only when _leber ewei_ functions as a non-iconic causal connective.

_/since_

As mentioned in section 6.2, _since_ can signal both subtypes of the causal relations in English texts, as it can occur in both positions: initial position of S1 and S2. When signalling the non-iconic causal relation, _since_ occurs in the initial position of S2. Thus, it restricts the S2 to the cause segment and S1 to the effect segment, as in example 30.

S1, _since_ S2

30) This was not good news, _since_ for obvious reasons, bears view a fish splashing around in water like angry wasps view a jam jar.\(^4\)

The procedure implemented in example 30 is that S1 is restricted to effect and S2 is restricted to cause. This restriction is caused by the presence of _since_ in the initial position of S2 and because _since_ only occurs with the cause segment in English texts. According to Blakemore, _since_ is also one of the "inferential markers" (1987: 68), which helps the reader make inferences based on the cause introduced by _since_. Based on its characteristics and the translation data in the current study, the most suitable equivalence for _since_ in Kurdish is _behoy ewei_. Nineteen out of 32 translators chose _behoy ewei_ as the translation option for _since_.

behoy ewei (since)

Among the existing Kurdish studies there is no reference to the causal connective behoy ewei. However, as mentioned earlier in section 6.2, behoy ewei is found in Kurdish texts and can signal both subtypes of the causal relation. When signalling a non-iconic causal relation, it usually occurs in the initial position of S2. Since it only occurs with the cause segment of the text, the order of the segment would become S1 effect S2 cause, as shown in example 31.

S1, behoy ewei S2

31) Qeiran nebûe belkû drûstkrawe behoy ewei hendê hokar w karigeri ke kardanewei debê beser komelge, boye peiwendi řastewxo lenêwan qeiran w komelge heye.141

Crisis notNEG-been-3S but make-done-was-PSV because ofCONJ some factors and impacts that reflections will-have onPREP society, that's why relation direct between crisis and society has.

Crisis has not been existent but it was created because of unsolved issues that have negative reflections on the society. That's why there is an obvious relation between crisis and society.

The procedure implemented in example 31 is that the presence of behoy ewei restricts the S2 segment to cause and therefore S1 is restricted to the effect segment. Thus the relation signalled in example 31 is the non-iconic causal relation. The translation data showed that behoy ewei is best translated into English as since, as translated by 19 out 32 translators. Both connectives exhibit similar characteristics and they are both flexible in their positions in the text. Therefore, they can signal both subtypes of the causal relations according to the position they occupy in the text.

as long as

The English causal connective is also flexible in terms of its position in the text, which can occur in both the initial position of S1 and S2. Therefore, it can signal both subtypes of the causal relations, as it only occurs with the cause segment. When as long as signals the non-

iconic causal relation, the procedure implemented is that S1 is restricted to effect and S2 is restricted to cause, as in example 32.

S1 as long as S2

32) I cannot see much future for this as a resilient strategy as long as Ken Clarke – an old-fashioned liberal of the Reggie Maudling school – remains in post at the Ministry of Justice.142

The relation signalled in example 32 is the non-iconic causal relation, because the order of the segments is S1 effect, S2 cause. The translation data suggested that the most suitable equivalence for as long as in Kurdish is hetakû, because it exhibits similar characteristics. It was chosen as a translation option by 20 translators out of 32.

hetakû (as long as)

The Kurdish causal connective hetakû exhibits similar characteristics to as long as, because it can also occur flexibly in Kurdish texts; whether initial position of S1 or S2. Also, it can only occur with the cause segment. Therefore, when it occurs in the initial position of S2, it signals the non-iconic causal relation, as in example 33.

S1 hetakû S2

33) Dînîyam hiç kêşeyek le nêwanyan řunadat hetakû ewan řêzi yaktır bigren.143

sure-1S am noNEG problem-INDF-ART inPREP between-them happen-notNEG as long asCONJ they each other would-hold-3P-AGR.

I am sure there will be no problem between them as long as they respect each other.

The procedure implemented in example 33 is that hetakû restricts the S2 to cause and therefore S1 is restricted to the effect segment. The translation data also confirmed that hetakû is similar to as long as, because both of them occur with the cause segment in the

text. So, when they occur in the initial position of S2 they both signal the non-iconic causal relation.

6.3 Conditional relations

The conditional relations and connectives are regarded as a sub-category of the causal-conditional relations and connectives in both languages (See section 6.1). The same characteristics of the causal relations are applied to the analysis of the conditional relations and connectives in the current study. For instance, the characteristic of iconicity; the order of the segments in S1 and S2, the semantico-pragmatic status of the segments; whether S1 is the condition segment and S2 is the result segment, and the position of the conditional connectives within those segments; whether they occur in the initial position of S1 or S2. Based on these criteria, the conditional relations and connectives are divided into two subtypes as iconic and non-iconic conditional relations.

6.3.1 Iconic conditional relation

The iconic conditional relation refers to those cases in which the order of the segments in the text is S1 condition, S2 result. The typical connectives that signal the iconic conditional relation in English are *if* and *otherwise* and in Kurdish they are *eger* and *heta eger*.

*if*

In English, *if* is regarded as the typical conditional connective, which can co-occur with other connectives as well. The clauses containing the English connective *if* are labelled as "*if*-clauses" (Comrie, 1986: 79). As far as the data from opinion articles are concerned, *if* is mainly used by journalists to reach consensus, to express disagreement or more generally, to communicate their ideas in order to be accepted. In this regard, Hesabi et al stated that *if* can be used as a "rhetorical device for gaining acceptance for one's claims" (2013: 187). In terms of position, *if* is one of the flexible connectives that could occur either in the initial position of S1, or in the initial position of S2. Since it only occurs with the condition segment, it can signal both subtypes of the conditional relations. As an iconic conditional, *if* occurs in the initial position of S1, and thus the order of the segments will be S1 condition S2 result, as in example 34.
If S1, S2

34) *If* I was a member of the Tea Party, I’d be worried that this was just Washington politics as usual, kicking the can down the road, as Americans say.¹⁴⁴

The procedure implemented in example 34 is that S1 is restricted by *if* to be the condition segment and S2 is restricted to the result segment. Therefore, the relation signalled in example 38 is the iconic conditional relation. The data from the English opinion articles suggested that *if* is a multifunctional connective that is not only flexible in its position in the text, but it also occurs with other connectives, as illustrated in example 35 occurring with *so* and in example 36 occurring with *then*.

If S1, so S2

35) *If* the emergency of a default was a false one, *so* the relief that a deal brings is ersatz, too.¹⁴⁵

If S1, then S2

36) *If* Democrats retake the House in 2012 [...] and hold the Senate and White House, *then* they can sit down and take this all apart again.¹⁴⁶

It is interesting that when *if* occurs with other connectives, *if* always occurs in the initial position of S1 and the other connectives occur in the initial position of S2. However, occurring with other connectives does not change the characteristics of *if* as a connective and it would still signal an iconic conditional relation, as in examples 35 and 36. Nonetheless, occurring with other connectives might pose challenges in translation. The translation data showed that the most suitable equivalent for *if* in Kurdish is *eger*. All of the 32 Kurdish translators translated *if* into Kurdish as *eger*.

The Kurdish conditional *eger* has been dealt with by Shwani in terms of its grammatical functions. He defines *eger* as a "conditional subordinating particle" that links a "subordinating clause to a main clause" (2003: 110). However, his definition is not backed by examples from actual real-world data. Also, he claims that *eger* can only occupy the initial position of the main clause, which is S1 in this case, whereas *if* can be found in both positions; initial position of S1 and S2. Moreover, he does not recognize the potential of *eger* as a connective that can signal semantic relations above its grammatical functions. Nonetheless, the translation data in the current study showed that *eger* is very similar to English *if* in terms of the specific relations it signals and in the different positions it can occur in; whether initial position of S1 or S2. When signalling an iconic conditional relation, *eger* occurs in the initial position of S1. Therefore, the order of the segments would become S1 condition S2 result, as in example 37.

**Eger S1, S2**

37) *Eger* kar wabřwat, sûnekan dawai drûstkîrdenî herêmî taibeti xoyan yaxwd jyabûnewe le Îraq deken.\(^\text{147}\)

\(\text{If}\) \(\text{CONJ}\) \(\text{work like-thisDEM-would-go-3S}\), Sunni-\(\text{DEF}\)-ART \(\text{demand form-doing-POSS region private 3P-RFX or separation from Iraq would-do-3P}\).

\(\text{If}\) the situation stays so, the Sunni will demand a private state of their own, or separation from Iraq.

The procedure implemented in example 37 is that *eger* restricts S1 to be the condition segment and S2 to be the result segment of the text. Thus, the relation signaled in example 37 is the iconic conditional relation. The translation data in the current study confirmed that the most suitable equivalence for *eger* in English is *if*, as chosen by all the 32 translators. However, *eger* is different from *if* in that *eger* does not co-occur with other connectives in Kurdish texts as *if* does in English texts, as illustrated in example 38.

38 *If* the emergency of a default was a false one, *so* the relief that a deal brings is ersatz, too.\(^\text{148}\)

Incorrect translation:

Eger ɾągeyandnî netwanînî pêdani mûçe drûst nebû, *kewate ew aramiyeiş ke ɾêkwtnêk legeł xoi deihênê nadrûste.

Correct translation:

Eger ɾągeyandnî netwanînî pêdani mûçe drûst nebû, ew aramiyeiş ke ɾêkwtnêk legeł xoi deihênê nadrûste

(Back translation)

If announcing a default was a false one, the relief that a deal brings would be fake, too.

Example 38 illustrates that there is no such instance as the combination between eger and kewate in Kurdish texts. However, the combination between if and so or then is very common in English, at least as observed in the opinion articles. This difference between the characteristics of eger and if could pose challenges for translators, as the translation responses showed that 14 out of 32 translators translated kewate in example 38 and produced weak Kurdish texts. The solution for such a case would be the use of omission technique in translation in which kewate is omitted in the translation and thus produces a more fluent Kurdish text.

**even if**

Similar to the other multifunctional connectives even if is also flexible in terms of its position and changing its position in the text will automatically change the type of the conditional relation it signals. As an iconic conditional connective, even if occurs in the initial position of S1 and constrains the order of the segments in the text to S1 condition S2 result, as in example 39.

**Even if** S1, S2

39) **Even if** Murdoch was right in saying that his lawyers told him that the court was likely to award upwards of £200,000 in damages for breach of

---

Taylor's privacy, all News International need have offered him was a tad over that figure.\textsuperscript{149}

The procedure implemented in example 39 is that \textit{even if} restricts S1 to be the condition segment of the text and S2 to be the result segment. Consequently, the relation signaled in example 38 is regarded as the iconic conditional relation. The translation data suggested that the most suitable equivalence to \textit{even if} in Kurdish is \textit{heta eger}, as selected by 30 out of 32 Kurdish translators.

\textbf{\textit{heta eger (even if)}}

The Kurdish conditional connective \textit{heta eger} has not been researched in Kurdish studies to date. However, the data from Kurdish opinion articles suggested that \textit{heta eger} is a flexible conditional connective that can signal both subtypes of the conditional relations, namely iconic and non-iconic conditional relations. It can occur in both positions in the text; whether in the initial position of S1 or S2, but it can only occur with the condition segment of the text. Therefore, \textit{heta eger} can constrain the condition segment to either S1 or S2, depending on its context. As an iconic conditional connective, \textit{heta eger} occurs in the initial position of S1 and the order of the segments would be S1 condition; S2 result, as in example 40.

\textit{Heta eger} S1, S2

40) \textbf{Heta eger} Turkya pştgirî Kurdistan nekat w car cariş le džî syaseti Kurdî w bernamakani hikûmeti Kurdî řabwestêt, \textbf{belam} le řû abûriewe factorêki baše bo berew pêşewa çûni herêmi Kurdistan.\textsuperscript{150}

\textit{Even if\textsc{CONJ} Turkey support\textsc{-POSS} Kurdistan not\textsc{NEG}-doing\textsc{-3S} and time to time\textsc{-also} in\textsc{PREP} against policy Kurdish and programs\textsc{-POSS} government Kurdish stand\textsc{-would\textsc{-3S}-AGR}, but\textsc{CONJ} in\textsc{PREP} face\textsc{-POSS} economy factor good\textsc{-3S}-is for toward front going\textsc{-POSS} region\textsc{-POSS} Kurdistan.}

\textsuperscript{149} Bryant, Ch. 18/08/2011, http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/commentators/chris-bryant-there-must-be-no-impunity-2339453.html

**Even if** Turkey has not supported Kurdistan and has sometimes stood against Kurdish policies and the government’s programmes, it would still be a positive factor for the economic boom in the Kurdistan Region.

The procedure implemented in example 40 is that *heta eger* restricts S1 to be the condition and S2 to be the result. Thus, the relation signalled in example 40 is the iconic conditional relation. The Kurdish data suggested that the most significant characteristics of iconic *heta eger* is that, unlike *even if*, it is always accompanied by *belam* (*but*) in S2. However, in translation, *belam* needs to be omitted, otherwise the English text would be awkward, as the connective *but* does not usually occur with *even if*, as in example 40. The responses from the Kurdish translators showed that *heta eger* is the most suitable equivalent for *even if*, as chosen by 30 out of 32 translators.

**unless**

The English conditional connective is also one of the flexible and multifunctional connectives, as it can occur in both positions; initial position of S1 and S2. As an iconic conditional connective, *unless* occurs in the initial position of S1 and constrains the order of the segments to S1 condition S2 result, as in example 41.

*Unless, S1, S2*

41) **Unless** their authority is absolute in the classroom, they cannot teach and children cannot learn.\(^{151}\)

The procedure implemented in example 41 is that *unless* restricts the position of S1 to the condition which represents the only condition on which the result in S2 will be achieved. So, the relation signaled in example 41 is the iconic conditional relation, because the order of the segments is S1 condition S2 result. The translation data suggested two equivalences for *unless* depending on the specific conditional relation it signals; *tenha eger* as an iconic conditional connective and *meger* as a non-iconic conditional connective.

tenha eger (unless)

The Kurdish tenha eger has not been researched in Kurdish studies so far. However, the Kurdish data in this study suggests that tenha eger is a conditional connective which can only signal the iconic conditional relation. The Kurdish conditional connective tenha eger can only occur in the initial position of S1 and it only occurs with the condition segment in Kurdish texts. Nonetheless, the data from Kurdish opinion articles showed that it was only used once in all the forty opinion articles collected as data in the current study, as in example 42.

42) Tenha eger asaiş w selamati Israil le metrsida bet, eger na Amrika xoy le gêžawi kesekani rožhełati naweišt nadat.\(^{152}\)

\(\text{Unless}\) \(\text{CONJ} \) \(\text{security and safety-POSS} \) \(\text{Israel inPREP danger should-3S-be, otherwise\text{CONJ} America 3S-RFX in maze-POSS problems-DEF-ART-POSS east-POSS middle notNEG-gives-3S.}\)

\(\text{Unless}\) Israel’s security and safety were in danger, America would not get involved in the complicated problems in Middle East.

The procedure implemented in example 42 is that tenha eger restricts S1 to be the cause segment and S2 to be the result segment of the text. Thus, the relation signalled in example 42 is the iconic conditional relation. The translation data showed an interesting characteristic of tenha eger, in which it occurs with another conditional connective, namely eger na (otherwise). However, the translation data suggested that eger na needs to be omitted when translated into English, otherwise the English text would seem awkward. Nineteen out of 32 Kurdish translators translated tenha eger into English as unless when implementing this procedural account.

otherwise

The English conditional connective otherwise is different from other conditional connectives in that it only occurs with the result segment of the text and it always occurs in the initial position of S2. That is, it can only signal the iconic conditional relation, as in example 43.

43) Mr Hollande's challenge will be to show that a leader who owes his
election to the crisis can carry the people with him. Otherwise he, like Mr
Sarkozy today, will be asking what he might have done differently five years
hence.\textsuperscript{153}

The procedure implemented in example 43 is that otherwise constrains the result in S2 to
be solely dependent on the truth of the condition in S1. That is, the order of the segments is
constrained to S1 condition S2 result, and the relation being signalled in example 43 is the
iconic conditional relation. The difference of the procedure implemented in case of
otherwise and in case of other conditional connectives is that the result in S2 is strictly
dependent on the condition in S1. The translation data in the current study along with the
Kurdish data showed that eger na exhibits very similar characteristics to otherwise. The
responses from the Kurdish translators showed that 21 out of 32 translators translated
otherwise into Kurdish as eger na.

\textit{eger na (otherwise)}

The Kurdish connective eger na is not as flexible as other Kurdish connectives in the text,
as it can only occur in the initial position of S2. Since it only occurs with the result
segment in Kurdish texts, it can only signal the iconic conditional relation, and the most
equivalent for eger na in English is the iconic unless as suggested by 21 out 32 translators.
For instance consider example 44.

S1, eger na S2

44) Katêk qeiran drûstdebet awe kari řožnamenûsane ka be şêweyekî zanstyane
mamelei legel bken, eger na řengdanewei xîrap debêt le zor bûari komelge.\textsuperscript{154}

\textit{When crisis form-being-is-3S-AGR thisDEM work-POSS journalists that with
shape-INDF-ART-POSS scientific treat with-3S should-do-3P, otherwiseCONJ
reflection bad will-be-3S-AGR inPREP many aspects-POSS society.}

When there is a crisis, it is the journalists' duty to deal with it responsibly;

\textit{otherwise} it will have a negative impact upon society.

\textsuperscript{153} Daley, J. 17/09/2011 \url{http://www.telegraph.co.uk/comment/columnists/janetdaley/8770696/The-European-dream-lies-in-ruins.html}
\textsuperscript{154} Baha'ddin, K. 25/06/2011, \url{http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=717&z=4&i=1}
According to Kurdish Academia, *eger na* has another form in Kurdish text, which is "*egina*" (2009: 106). However, there is hardly any difference between *eger na* and *egina*.

Both items are the same except for a slight change in the pronunciation which is due to the difference in the dialects using the same word. So, it is perhaps more logical to think that *eger na* and *egina* are two allomorphs of the same term, *eger na*, and that they can be substituted by each other without any change in the meaning, or the type of the relation signalled by them. For instance, consider the substitution of *eger na* by *egina* in example 45.

45) Katêk qeiran drûstdebet awe kari ŋoznamênûsane ka be şêweyeki zanstyane mameleî legel bken, *egina* řengdanewei xırap debêt le zor bûari komelga.155

When crisis form-being-is-3S-AGR thisDEM work-POSS journalists that with shape-INDF-ART-POSS scientific treat with-3S should-do-3P, otherwiseCONJ reflection bad will-be-3S-AGR inPREP many aspects-POSS society.

When there is a crisis, it is the journalists’ duty to deal with it responsibly; otherwise it will have a negative impact on the society.

The substitution test suggests that *eger na* and *egina* are similar connectives, and that they are different allomorphs of the same lexeme *eger na*.

**lest**

The nature of the relation signalled by *lest* is not typical of the conditional relations. That is, writers use *lest* to help the reader process the information as: S1 is the cause for preventing an action to happen in S2. From a Relevance Theoretic point of view, *lest* is constraining the likelihood of an action or a state to exist in S2 via the presence of an action or a state in S1. Moreover, *lest* can only occur with the result segment in the text and its position is confined to initial position of S2, as the English data suggested. So, *lest* can only signal the iconic conditional relation, as in example 46.

46) They also assumed that cowed and cowing politicians wouldn't dare to inquire into the dark arts of journalists lest they inquire into our private lives.\textsuperscript{156}

In example 46, the writer wants to send a message to the reader that the condition in S1 (not inquiring the dark arts of journalists) prevents the likelihood of the result in S2 (journalists inquiring into their private lives). Thus, the order of the segments is restricted to S1 result S2 condition, and the relation is the non-iconic conditional relation. The translation data suggested that the most suitable equivalence for \textit{lest} in Kurdish is \textit{nek}, as suggested by all the Kurdish translators in the translation task carried out in the current study.

\textit{nek (lest)}

\textit{Nek} is claimed to have synonyms as "\textit{newek, newekû}" (Kurdish Academia, 2009: 79). However, the data from the Kurdish opinion articles and the translation data in the current study show that these different words both represent the same word \textit{nek}. That is because, substituting \textit{nek} with either of them will not change the type of the relation signalled, neither does it change the order of the segments. Thus, \textit{newk} and \textit{newekû} are actually allomorphs of the same word \textit{nek}, and the different pronunciations are caused by their being used in different areas in Kurdistan. The Kurdish connective \textit{nek} signals an iconic conditional relation, based on the procedure in which it is interpreted, and the constraints it puts on the segments as S1 condition S2 result, as in example 47.

47) Snûri herêmi Kurdistan bewe dyari dekrêt eger idareyeki fidřałi tokma leser bnemai abûri w syasi w komelayeti w ŕoşenbirî jêgîrbkrêt, \textit{nek} asteng bxrête pêşi w opozisyoni nerêni bo drûstbkrêt ke amanji rûxandeni ew herêmê bêt.\textsuperscript{157}

\textit{Border-POSS region-POSS Kurdistan withPREP-this-DEM decide-would-be-done-PSV that administration-POSS federal-POSS solid on basis economic and political and social and intellectual base-should-be-done-PSV, lestCONJ obstacle thrown in front-POSS 3S and opposition negative forPREP make-}

\textsuperscript{156} Bryant, Ch. 18/08/2011, \url{http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/commentators/chris-bryant-there-must-be-no-impunity-2339453.html}
\textsuperscript{157} Ahmad, K. 31/05/2011, \url{http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=8945&z=4&l=1}
The borders of Kurdistan region will be drawn if there is a solid administration on economic, political, social, and intellectual bases, lest they form a negative opposition that aims at destroying this region.

The procedure implemented in example 47 is that *nek* constrains the condition in S1 to prevent the likelihood of preventing the result in S2. Therefore, the order of the segments is S1 condition and S2 result, and the relation being signalled in example 47 is the iconic conditional relation, which is the only type of conditional relation *nek* can signal in Kurdish texts. The characteristic of *nek* as an iconic conditional connective was also verified in translation in which all the Kurdish translators translated *nek* into English as *lest*, which is one of the iconic conditional connectives.

### 6.3.2 Non-iconic conditional relations

Non-iconic conditional relations include all those relations wherein the condition segment is constrained to S2, and the result segment is restricted to S1.

*If*

As mentioned in section 6.4, *if* is a multifunctional conditional connective that can signal both subtypes of the conditional relations such as iconic and non-iconic. As a non-iconic conditional connective, *if* occurs in the initial position of S2 and constrains the order of segments to S1 result S2 condition, as in example 48.

S1, *if* S2

48) The scale of the cuts is guaranteed with triggers of across-the-board cuts *if* the committee cannot agree on where to find them.\(^\text{158}\)

The procedure implemented in example 46 is that *if* helps the writer to lead the reader to a conditional truth that S1 is entirely dependent on the truth of S2. So, S2 is the only condition to cause S1. That is, *if* restricts S2 to be the only condition of the truth of S1.

\(^\text{158}\) Allegra and Tisdall, 13/04/2011, [http://www.guardian.co.uk/politics/2011/apr/12/david-milliband-critical-us-afghanistan](http://www.guardian.co.uk/politics/2011/apr/12/david-milliband-critical-us-afghanistan)
Since *if* occurs in the initial position of S2, the relation signalled in example 48 is the non-iconic conditional relation. The translation data in the current study showed that *eger* exhibits very similar characteristics in Kurdish text. All the occurrences of *if* were translated into Kurdish as *eger* by all 32 Kurdish translators.

**Eger (If)**

Similar to English *if*, *eger* can also signal a non-iconic conditional relation, as it can occur in the initial position of S2 as well. When used to signal a non-iconic conditional relation, *eger* restricts S1 to be the result segment and S2 to be the condition segment, as in example 49.

S1 *eger* S2

49) Em ṭaportane ìkùmet naçar deken bûdjęyeki zyatr bo nawçeyeki jugrafi terxan bken *eger* žmarei daniştwani le nawçekani tır zyatîrbû.  

*ThisDEM reports government noNEG-solution would-make budget-INDF-ART more forPREP area-INDF-ART geographic dedicate would-do-3P ifCONJ number-POSS population from areas-DEF-ART other more-was.*

These reports would oblige the government to dedicate more budgets for some areas *if* there were a larger number of populations from other areas.

The procedure implemented in example 49 is that *eger* constrains the result in S1 to the only condition presented in S2. Since *eger* only occurs with the condition segment in Kurdish texts, its position in S2 changes the iconicity of the conditional relation to non-iconic. That is, *eger* signals a non-iconic conditional relation in example 49.

**Even if**

Similar to *if*, *even if* can also function to signal both of the conditional relations depending on its position in the text: whether initial position of S1 or S2. When signalling a non-iconic conditional relationship, *even if* usually occurs in the initial position of S2. Because

---

even if only occurs with the condition segment in English text, then the order of the segments would become S1 result S2 condition, as in example 50.

S1 even if S2

50) They did it because they could and because they thought that even if they were caught they'd pretty much get away with it.  

The procedure implemented in example 50 is that the result in S1 is true even if the condition in S2 did not exist. That is, the conditional relation signaled by even if is different from the conditional relation signaled by if. The reason is that even if presents non-truth conditional, in which the condition might not be true, but the result is still true, whereas the condition presented by if is usually true and the result in S1 is entirely dependent on that condition. For instance, compare if and even if in examples 48 and 50 respectively.

heta eger (even if)

The Kurdish conditional connective heta eger has not been mentioned in Kurdish studies so far. However, the current study suggests that it is a flexible conditional connective that can occur in both positions S1 and S2, and that it can signal both subtypes of the conditional relations. When signalling a non-iconic conditional relation, heta eger occurs in the initial position of S2 and the order of segments would be S1 result S2 condition, as in example 51.

S1 heta eger S2

51) Yarmeti yektırmadan heta eger le rêkxistinekanî hizbeke xoşman nebûaye.  

help-POSS Each-other-1P-AGR would-do even ifCONJ inPREP organizations-DEF-ART-POSS party-DEF-ART-POSS 1P-RFX notNEG-would-be-3S.

We would help each other even if they were not affiliated to our party.

160 Bryant, Ch. 18/08/2011, http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/commentators/chris-bryant-there-must-be-no-impunity-2339453.html
The procedure implemented in example 51 is very similar to the one of *even if*. That is, *heta eger* constrains the *result* in S1 and regards it as true, but the condition presented in S2 might not be true. So, the order of the segments in example 51 is S1 result S2 condition, and the relation being signaled is the non-iconic conditional relation. The translation responses received from the Kurdish translators showed that 30 out of 32 translators chose *heta eger* as the most suitable equivalence for *even if*.

**unless**

As mentioned in section 6.3, *unless* is one of the flexible conditional connectives that can occur in both positions in the text; whether initial position of S1 or S2. When signalling the non-iconic conditional relation, *unless* occurs in the initial position of S2 and constrains the order of the segments to S1 result S2 condition, as in example 52. S1, *unless* S2

52) The killers of up to 150,000 Lebanese are also safe, *unless* they try to knock off a bishop or a Sayed or a warlord.\(^{162}\)

The procedure implemented in example 52 is that *unless* restricts the result in S1 to be dependent on the only condition mentioned in S2. Since, *unless* only occurs with the condition segment of the text, and in this case, occurs in the initial position of S2, then the relation between S1 and S2 in example 52 would become the non-iconic conditional relation. The most suitable equivalence for the non-iconic *unless* in Kurdish is *meger* as chosen by 22 out of 32 Kurdish translators.

**meger (unless)**

The translation data in the current study showed that *meger* is the most suitable equivalent for *unless* in Kurdish. However, this choice might be restricted according to the characteristics of *meger* that it can only occur in the initial position of S2 and never in the initial position of S1. Moreover, in section 6.4, the translation data suggested that when *unless* signals an iconic conditional relation, its Kurdish equivalent is *tenha eger*, whereas as a non-iconic conditional connective, its Kurdish equivalent is suggested to be *meger*, as in example 53.

Those who were in charge of the crimes in 17 February should be punished

unless killing civilians is a lawful act.

The procedure implemented by meger is very similar to the one of unless. That is, meger constrains the order of the segments to S1 condition S2 result, and therefore signals the non-iconic conditional relation.

The translation data in the current study revealed an interesting difference between unless and its equivalents in Kurdish tenh eger and meger, in which unless is flexible in its position in the text. That is, it can occur in both positions in the text; initial position of S1 and initial position of S2. Therefore, it can signal both subtypes of the conditional relations in English. However, its Kurdish equivalents are not flexible in terms of their position in the text. Tenha eger can only occur in the initial position of S1 and thus can only signal the iconic conditional relation, whereas meger can only occur in the initial position of S2 and thus can only signal the non-iconic conditional relation.

6.4 Conclusions

Chapter Six modified the Hallidayan framework of the causal-conditional relations on the macro level and divided them into four subcategories according to the criterion of iconicity, such as iconic causal, non-iconic causal, iconic conditional and non-iconic conditional. Consequently, the connectives on the micro level of the classification were also redistributed according to their characteristics, which are also used as criteria in terms of the procedures they implement within the framework of Relevance Theory, the positions they occupy in the text; whether initial position of S1 or S2. These criteria were applied to Sanders et al’s (1992: 2) cognitive parameter of "Order of Segments" verified with the

translation technique of "paradigms of correspondence" (Aijmer et al, 2006: 105). This was to show the restrictions that the connectives have on the order of the segments; whether S1 cause-S2 effect; S1 effect-S2 cause; S1 condition-S2 result; or S1 result-S2 condition.

In terms of the translation challenges of the causal connectives, most of them are straightforwardly translated from English into Kurdish and vice-versa. However, concerning several connectives which are flexible in their positions in the text, there could be issues for translation, as these items could signal different causal-conditional relations in different positions in the text. That is, when a certain causal connective changes its position in the text, such as if, since, eger and hetakû, the order of the segments in the text must be changed accordingly. So, translators should be aware of the characteristics of the connectives which could change the type of the relation signalled by them. For instance, the connective unless has two Kurdish equivalents that cannot be interchangeably used such as tenha eger and meger. These challenges are particularly difficult in the case of translation from English into Kurdish where there is very little knowledge about the specific Kurdish causal-conditional connectives and their functions in the text, in the literature on Kurdish studies.
CHAPTER SEVEN: TEMPORAL RELATIONS IN ENGLISH AND KURDISH

7.0 Introduction

The three previous chapters dealt with the subcategories of additive, adversative and causal-conditional relations and the connectives that signal them in English and Kurdish. The current chapter focuses on the fourth and final subcategory of conjunctive relations, namely the temporal relations. The notion of time has been a controversial subject in science, philosophy and religion and a universal definition of time that is applicable to all these different fields is not possible. For instance, philosophers refer to time as an element of the primary structure of the universe, in which events take place in sequence (Rynasiewicz, 2004). According to Newton, time and space create a container for events. In contrast, Maršić states that in Kant's view "time does not refer to any kind of container that events and objects 'move through' nor to any entity that 'flows' but is instead part of a fundamental intellectual structure within which humans sequence and compare events" (2011: 16). Maršić also quotes from Aristotle (350 BC) that "time is the measure of change" but it is not "change itself" because a change may be "faster or slower" (Maršić, 2011: 18). However, all the existing research on English temporal relations seems to agree on one point: that there is a one-way direction of the arrow of time pointing from past to future. Therefore, they agree on a linear model of time, which provides a baseline reference point against which events can be placed in order of occurrence. Thus, people can establish that one event occurred subsequent to, previous to or simultaneous with another one. However, Halliday and Hasan (1976) only refer to one aspect of this sequence when they describe all categories of their temporal relations as "the one subsequent to the other" (1976: 261). The distinctions between the sub-categories of temporal relations in the Hallidayan framework is instead based on the external/internal aspects of the relation, in which they state that "in the internal type the successivity is not in the events being talked about but in the communication process" (Ibid: 263). Nevertheless, this distinction cannot be generalised to account for the temporal relations in written forms, as there is no face-to-face dialogue and so it is harder to pin down the external contexts for sequentiality. Also,
the external/internal criterion is not able to differentiate between time adverbials in terms of their grammatical functions and semantic properties. It would seem then, that there are limitations to the internal/external distinction. Instead, drawing on the wider research literature on temporality and connectives, I will explore the possibility of using the representation of time scenes in the textual segments as a means of sub-categorising temporal connectives into different temporal relations.

In temporal relations, the two textual segments (S1 and S2) are considered as related to each other because of their function to represent scenes which succeed each other in time. In this regard, the current chapter regards the time scenes as the time of the represented events in S1 and S2. That is, the time scenes are embedded in the segments S1 and S2. However, the textual sequence of these time scenes does not always match the iconic linear organisation implied by Halliday and Hasan’s description of the temporal relations construed when "one event is subsequent to the other" (1976:261). That is, there could be alternative non-iconic forms realised by the temporal relations such as reverse chronological: one is previous to the other.

Another aspect of the temporal relations can be signalled by time adverbials in the text. However, there are differences between the time adverbials that act as temporal connectives and signal temporal relations in the text to create cohesion and the sentential adjuncts that function only as time adverbials within a single sentence, referring to the sentence as a whole. As discussed in Chapter Four, there is an important distinction here in identifying the linguistic items that count as connectives. The main difference between the two types of time adverbials is that temporal connectives operate above the clausal level and connect two textual segments, whereas the time adverbials are constituents of a single sentence; and therefore operate within a single textual segment. The form of the text in which a temporal connective is used is usually S1 and S2 are independent segments, i.e., independent clauses with their own verb phrases. For instance, the word after in example 1 is a temporal connective and in example 2 it is a time adverbial (not a temporal connective).
1) The militiamen were a mopping-up force who occupied the territory *after* air strikes had cleared the way.\(^{164}\)

*S1* TC

*S2*

2) American diplomats were taken hostage in Iran *after* the Islamic revolution.\(^{165}\)

**One textual segment**

According to Quirk et al, the temporal conjuncts that are "integrated into clause structure" are "sentence adjuncts of time" rather than "conjuncts", and that the sentence adjuncts are more closely related to the "content of the sentence" than "conjuncts" (1985: 555). In this regard, Masatosi (1986: 54) states "conjuncts have a connective function; so it is natural to consider that Quirk et al.’s conjuncts and Halliday and Hasan's connectives are equivalent", because in both accounts the conjuncts are considered to have a connective function. So, the word *after* in example 1 is a temporal connective because it is not integrated into the clause structure of S1 or S2, whereas *after* in example 2 is regarded as a sentence adjunct of time only and it forms a constituent of a single textual segment.

In order for the temporal connective to signal a *temporal* relation there should be two temporal scenes, which link two separate textual segments. In this way, the temporal connective would contribute to the cohesion between the two temporal scenes. This is in line with Halliday and Hasan's definition of conjunction as "a specification of the way in which what is to follow is systematically connected to what has gone before" (1976: 226). Thus, in Halliday and Hasan's terms, the temporal connective is the item that creates a link between two predicates of two separate clauses (segments S1 and S2), where these two segments are usually adjacent to each other. In the Hallidayan description of the temporal relations, the propositions of two successive sentences may be (as discussed earlier) simply one of sequence in time; "the one is subsequent to the other" (Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 260). This temporal relation is expressed by terms such as (*then, next, after that, when, next day, until then, at the same time, at this point*) in English and in Kurdish by (*paş ewe* (after that), *inca* (then), *ta* (until), *êsta* (now), *paşan* (next), *katêk* (when)).

\(^{164}\) Patrick Cockburn, 25/03/2012 [http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/commentators/patrick-cockburn-the-attempt-to-topple-president-assad-has-failed-7584493.html](http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/commentators/patrick-cockburn-the-attempt-to-topple-president-assad-has-failed-7584493.html)

As far as Kurdish is concerned, there is very little reference to temporal relations in the existing research. However, Shwani (2003: 43) mentions inca, ta and katêk in his PhD thesis, referring to them as an "Amrazi Bestn" (Conjunction Particles). He outlines these three items in terms of their grammatical functions within the sentence. Also, Rasul refers to the temporally related clauses in Kurdish compound sentences, stating that "the verb phrase specifies and constrains the temporal sequence in the clauses of the sentence" (2006: 37). However, Rasul does not mention the use of a temporal connective to signal such relations. As far as English is concerned, there are a vast number of studies on English temporal relations and their classifications. Hitzeman (1997) deals with the grammatical aspects of the temporal relations in English to parse texts in the computational HPSG/DRT system. Schilder (1997) investigates the time sequences in English and German narrative discourse. Grote (2003) analyzes the production of the temporal relations in English and German from a cross-linguistic perspective. Jaszczolt (2010) suggests a formal compositional account of temporal reference in the framework of Default Semantics. Maršic (2011) focuses on the investigation and understanding of the different ways time is expressed in English. However, the findings of the study are not based on comparative grounds. Regarding other aspects of the temporal relations, Martinez (2011) adopts a semantic approach to temporal information processing. All these studies agree on taking into consideration the time scenes (time reference) which are embedded in the textual segments in order to recognise the time adverbial that is used as a temporal connective. Their findings have helped the current study to adopt the criterion of different time scenes for the analysis of the temporal relations and connectives. Having no previous taxonomy of Kurdish connectives signalling temporal relations, I shall depend on the lexical items listed in Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification of temporal connectives as a starting point, in order to create a comparable categorisation of the Kurdish temporal connectives. The identification and categorisation of Kurdish connectives will be verified using the same translation technique of finding equivalences in order to build a paradigm of correspondences between the connectives in both languages.

Another problem with the classification of temporal connectives in Halliday and Hasan (1976) is that they classify the temporal connectives into four subcategories such as: "Temporal Simple, Temporal Complex, Internal Temporal and Here and Now" (1976: 243) without providing criteria for the classification and without giving examples for each connective under each sub-type. Therefore, this classification of the temporal relations
does not indicate the grammatical and semantic properties of the connectives. For example, the connectives *then* and *next* are repeated under the headings "Temporal Simple" and "Temporal Complex" without any indication as to why they are different. The "Here and Now" subtype of the temporal relations is excluded in the modified classification in the current thesis, because "Here and Now" refers to the context of communication (not the time scenes), and the connectives under this type are mostly found in spoken genres rather than written genres. Also, the concept of "specific" is not clearly presented in the classification, because specificity is repeated in the "sequential" and "specific" temporal relations, without providing examples to show the difference. These distinctions which lack explicit criteria may cause confusion when differentiating between the subtypes of the temporal relation. Therefore, this current study depends upon the direction of the time reference between the two textual segments (Schilder, 1997; Grote, 2003; Maršić, 2011). That is, the temporal relations between S1 and S2 could be one of these three: sequential, terminal or simultaneous based on the time scenes of the events in S1 and S2, which are distinguished in the following way.

1- **Sequential**: S1 happens subsequent to S2 or S1 happens previous to S2

2- **Terminal**: S1 is ended by the event in S2 or S2 is ended by the event in S1

3- **Simultaneous**: Both events in S1 and S2 happen simultaneously either in past or present.

In terms of Relevance Theory, these subtypes of the temporal relations are distributed according to the constraints on the segments S1 and S2, in which both the position of the connective and the grammatical structure of the segments play important roles. For example, the temporal connectives constrain the segments based on the sequence in time in type 1. Type 2 involves the characteristics of the connectives that indicate an end point in time. Type 3 indicates the constraints put on S1 and S2 by the connective, in which the events in both segments happened or will happen at the same time. Based on these criteria the temporal relations and connectives are classified in the current study, as presented in Table 9.
Unlike Halliday and Hasan's classification of temporal relations, Table 9 outlines clear distinctions between the three subtypes of the temporal relations. The characteristics of each sub-type and the properties of the connectives that signal them are further explained in sections 7.1, 7.2 and 7.3.

Table 9: Temporal relations and connectives in English and Kurdish

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Relation</th>
<th>Subtypes</th>
<th>English Connectives</th>
<th>Frequency out of 38572 tokens</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Kurdistan Connectives</th>
<th>Frequency out of 36988 tokens</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sequential</td>
<td>then</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>inca</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>next</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>after</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>paşan</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>0.045</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>before</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>pêş</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal</td>
<td>until</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>ta</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simultaneous</td>
<td>now</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>ėsta</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>0.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>when</td>
<td>34</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>katêk</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>0.048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ke</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>0.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>since</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>lewetei</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.016</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total numbers

| English         | 95 | 0.24 | Kurdish | 150 | 0.40 |


7.1 Sequential

The sequential relation implies that two or more sentences are connected in which the relation is one of linear sequence in time, i.e., two scenes that are distinct from each other in successive periods of time. According to Halliday and Hasan, this type of temporal relations is typically signalled by the connective "then" (1976: 261). However, the connective then cannot account for all the subcategories of temporal relation. There are also other connectives that are classified under the sequential relation; before, next, after, and then and the Kurdish connectives include: pêştir, inca, dwatır and paşan. The sequence signalled by these connectives could be previous to, like before and pêştir or subsequent to, for instance after and paşan. Although these connectives all imply sequentiality in the temporal sequence, they do not distinguish whether the order of the time scenes has to match the order in which those scenes are textually represented. The relative match between the order of the scenes and the order of the textual segments has been considered by many critics. According to Hitzeman, the distribution of the textual segments (S1 and S2) is constrained by the use of each connective. That is, the temporal scope of S1 and S2 need to comply with the time reference of the connective with reference to the logical order of the text. For instance, consider Hitzeman's example: "John wore his shoes after he wore the socks" (1997: 57). According to Hitzeman, it is only logical that the act of wearing shoes (S1) follows the act of wearing socks (S2) as such the logical order of the text could be one of the following:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
S1 \text{ wearing shoes} & \text{after} & S2 \text{ wearing socks} \\
(Temporal order) & 2 & 1 \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
S1 \text{ wearing socks} & \text{before} & S2 \text{ wearing shoes} \\
(Temporal order) & 1 & 2 \\
\end{array}
\]

However, the need for the textual sequence to match that of the temporal scenes is restricted by the nature of the scenes in this particular example and does not always hold true. Thus, it is the temporal connective that restricts the sequences in time rather than the textual segments themselves. For example, there could be cases in which the logical schema in the time scenes does not underpin the same restrictions of successive sequencing: some actions can be carried out simultaneously, as the act of having a cake
with a cup of coffee. In this case, there is no restriction on the precedence of 'drinking coffee' over 'eating a cake'. This suggests that differentiating the relations in the time scenes may be more helpful as a means of analysing the type of the connectives that are used to signal the temporal relation.

before

As far as the sequential relation is concerned, tense plays an important role in differentiating or interpreting sequential relations, especially in the case of before and after. According to Kubota et al, the temporal relation signalled by English temporal connectives are "interpreted with respect to the speech time, i.e. that they are absolute tenses" (2009: 311). In this regard, both English and Kurdish data show that the temporal reference signalled by the temporal connectives is compatible with the tenses of both segments S1 and S2. That is, S1 contains an event that happens following the event in S2. The temporal connective before constrains the temporal order of the text as S1 subsequent S2 previous, when it occurs in the initial position of S1, as in example 3a. However, when it occurs in the initial position of S2, the order will shift to S1 previous S2 subsequent, as in example 3b.

3a) Before the midterm elections in November in which the Democrats lost control of the House of Representatives, Mr Obama said he would pivot to deficit reduction after two years of stimulus designed to rescue the economy.166

The temporal connective before in example 3 signals a sequential temporal connection. The use of before helps the reader to understand the time sequence between S1 and S2, in which S2 precedes S1 in terms of logical order of the events. So, regarding the scope of the temporal reference as presented in Figure 4, the order of the temporal sequence is: S1 subsequent; S2 previous. That is, S2 happens previous to S1, because the temporal connective before is located at the initial position of S1. This logical time reference order would be changed to (S1 happening subsequent to S2) if the position of the temporal connective was shifted to the initial position of S2 as in the following example, which is example 3 re-ordered for illustration.

3b) Mr Obama said he would pivot to deficit reduction after two years of stimulus designed to rescue the economy, before the midterm elections in November in which the Democrats lost control of the House of Representatives.

In this reworked example, the logical order of the time reference in text above is actually S1 subsequent S2 previous. This suggests that the textual position of the temporal connectives could play an important role in determining the temporal reference of the associated clauses. This might in some cases have significant implications for translation. Ogihara states that in a language like Japanese "the tense form acceptable in temporal adjunct clauses is determined by the temporal connective rather than the temporal location of the eventuality denoted by the embedded clause with respect to the speech time" (1996: 27). Ogihara gives examples as the Japanese temporal connective Mae (before), with which only non-past tense is acceptable, whereas with ato (after), only the past tense is acceptable. Nonetheless, the problems raised by comparative case of Japanese and English is not a universal one, as the positions of both English before and Kurdish pêş affect the temporal order of the text and there is no restriction on the tense of either respective segments.

*pêş (before)*

The Kurdish temporal connective pêş has the same characteristics as before in terms of position in the text and the time reference scope it allows, as seen in example 4.

4) Tûrkîya dawai le Işrail kırd ke pêş ewei dawai danûstan bken debê dawai lebûrûdn bken.\(^{167}\)

*Turkey demand fromIsrael did-3S-AGR that before ask-for talks do-3P should ask-for forgiveness should-3S-do.*

Turkey demanded that Israel apologised before they could ask for peace talks.

The Kurdish temporal connective pêş along with its English equivalent before mark a sequential temporal relation between two time scenes, i.e., two separate time references one in S1 and the other in S2. The antonyms to pêş and before are paş and after as

---

suggested by the translation data in the current study and chosen by all the 32 Kurdish translators.

**after**

Schilder states that the discourse semantics of *after* signal "a *sentential relation* holding between the situation described by the main clause and the subordinated temporal clause" (1999: 14). According to Schilder (1999: 15), *after* signals a sequential temporal relation between the textual segments in the text as well as an "implicit causal relation", as in example 5.

5) **After** he switched on the light, the room was brightly lit.

Schilder views the order of the temporal scenes in example 5 as S1 previous S2 subsequent, and claims that the same text could be explained as S1 cause S2 effect, i.e., S1 has caused S2. Thus, the temporal order of the scenes is transferred to a textual order. In this regard there is some truth-conditionality in the relation in a way that "switching the light on" must be true in order to consider the truth of "the room was brightly lit". The implicit causal relation which is claimed to be existent in the temporal relation signalled by *after* might be one significant characteristic that differentiates *after* from *before*. For instance, Schilder (1999: 15) gives an example, presented again here in 6, to illustrate the discourse semantics of *before*.

6) **Before** Sue punched anyone, she left the party.

The sequential relation signalled by *before* in 6 is a non-factual relation. That is, the situation described by S2 prevents the situation described by S1 from becoming true. This, however, does not mean that there is a causal relation, because "nothing has happened". So, *after* can implicitly allow a causal relation embedded in the sequential temporal relation, whereas *before* can only signal a sequential temporal relation. This multifunctionality of *after* can mislead translators to translate it into a causal connective in Kurdish, while in case of *before* this confusion does not happen. For instance, three Kurdish translators translated *after* into Kurdish as *leber ewei* (*because*). However, there was no causal relation between the two segments S1 and S2 in the text.

Another issue with the translation of *after* is that when it functions as a temporal connective it can occur in two forms as *after* and *after that*. However, the data from the
English opinion articles suggest that *after* is more flexible than *after that* in terms of the connective’s position in the text. *After that* is only found at the initial position of S2, whereas *after* could occur either in initial position of S1 or of S2, as in examples 7, 8 and 9.

S1 after S2

7) The militiamen were a mopping-up force who occupied the territory *after* air strikes had cleared the way.168

After S1, S2

8) *After* his friends failed to take him up on the call to get "this kickin' off all over", he was arrested.169

The temporal connective *after* in both examples 7 and 8 signals the sequential temporal relation. However, there is an implicit causal relation embedded in S2 in 7 and in S1 in 8. So, the shift of the TC's position changes the temporal sequence in the text, as the interpretation of the time scenes also change accordingly. For instance in 7, the order is (S1 subsequent S2 previous; therefore S1 effect S2 cause) and in example 8 it is (S1 previous S2 subsequent; therefore S1 cause S2 effect). However, this phenomenon is not applicable to *after that*, due to the presence of *that* which would constrain the structure of the sentence and ultimately the order of the text as it has a cataphoric reference, as in example 9.

*after that*

9) In my thirties, I started catching up on some of the basic skills that I had previously been too lazy or feeble to master: driving, cycling, a respectable front crawl. *After that*, I took to hiking up mountains (small Welsh ones, admittedly).170

---

168 Cockburn, P. 25/03/2012, [http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/commentators/patrick-cockburn-the-attempt-to-topple-president-assad-has-failed-7584493.html](http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/commentators/patrick-cockburn-the-attempt-to-topple-president-assad-has-failed-7584493.html)


There seems to be no further difference in the functions of *after that* and *after* except for the structural constraints on the order of the textual segments.

*paş ewe (after that)*

As the Kurdish temporal connective *paş ewe* has not been mentioned in *Kurdish* research, the current study has used evidence from the translation data, received from the Kurdish translators, to set up a paradigm of correspondence between English *after that* and Kurdish *paş ewe*. By examining both the Kurdish text and the translation responses from the translators in example 10, it is obvious that the same characteristics and restrictions of *after that* apply to Kurdish *paş ewe*. Also, the translation data received from the Kurdish translators in the current study confirmed this, because all of the 32 Kurdish translators chose *after that* as the translation for *paş ewe*.

10) Türkiya dawai le Isřail kırd ke pêş ewei dawai danûstan bken debê dawai lebûrdn bken. **Paş ewe** debê qerebüi xêzani ew no kese bkat w abloqêş leser Ėgezê labibat.\(^\text{171}\)

*Turkey demand from PREP Israil did-3S-AGR that before ask-for talks do-3P should ask-for forgiveness should-3S-do. After CONJ compensate that DEM nine people should-do-3P-AGR and embargo-too on Gaza lift-should-3P-do.*

Turkey demanded that Israel apologised before they could ask for peace talks. **After that**, they should compensate the families of the nine victims and lift the embargo on Gazza.

Like its English equivalent, the occurrence of *paş ewe* is confined to the initial position of S2, and it has no potential to signal another relation apart from a sequential temporal relation. Also, the temporal connective is composed of two words *paş* = *after* and *ewe* = *that*. That is why it is the most suitable equivalent for the English temporal connective *after that*.

*then*

According to Maršic (1999: 146) "the adverb *then* is among the most frequent English temporal adverbs, and it has great communicative strength, easily expressing one or

---

another semantic category (or more than one simultaneously)”. The English temporal connective *then* plays the role of a linking adverbial, and also realises the semantic role of time. However, as a connective, it is essential to separate the anaphoric *then* from the non-anaphoric one, because only anaphoric *then* is considered as a temporal connective. In this regard, Schiffrin states that *then* is used as "a time deictic providing temporal index in discourse time [...] then can be either deictic or anaphoric." (1987:246). As a deictic, *then* signals time reference, i.e. the temporal relation between an event and speaking time. However, *then* can also be used as an anaphor, where it signals a temporal relation between two linguistic events. For the purpose of this discussion the focus will only be trained on the anaphoric functions of *then*, as in example 11.

11) But though I had some memories of that time, they were a bit frayed at the edges. *Then* I reached the passage in which he describes going through the Canal, and the arrival of the gully-gully man on board, an Egyptian street conjuror who was a fixture in most passages.172

Example 11 consists of two time scenes — S1 previous and S2 subsequent, which are linked via *then*. Based on the data from English opinion articles, *then* usually occurs in the initial position of S2 and in such cases S2 is always the subsequent time scene and S1 is the previous time scene. So, the anaphoric use of *then* signals the sequential temporal relation, as it shows the time succession between two events and not a single time reference. The translation data showed that *then* can have more than one equivalent; *paşan* and *inca*; 19 translators chose *paşan* and 13 translators chose *inca* as the translation for *then*. The two Kurdish equivalents have a great deal in common and there is barely any significant difference between them in terms of position in the text, where both of them usually occur in the initial position of S2.

**inca (then)**

According to Kurdish academics, *inca* has two other allomorphs that are used interchangeably without any change in the type of relation signalled in the text, like "*ewca* and *emca*" (Kurdish Academia, 2009: 196). However, they did not indicate what specific
type of the temporal relations *inca* signals in Kurdish texts. The translation data show that *inca* is translated into English as *then*, therefore it signals the sequential temporal relation, as in example 12. Also, the collocations of *inca* suggest that not only does it mark a temporal relation but like *then* it could also signal a causal relation depending on its context.

12) Isřail katê peiwendi așťîyanê lageł hiç yekê lew włatanei ke Kûrdestanyan beserđa dabeş bûe nema *inca* bîr le drûstkîrdnî peiwendi legeł Kûrd dekatewe.¹⁷³

*Israel when relation peaceful-3S-AGR withPREP noNEG one from countries that Kurdistan-3P-AGR over-3P-AGR divide have been disappeared then 3S think-POSS making relationships withPREP Kurds will-3S-do.*

When Israel cuts off peaceful relationships with all the countries between which Kurdistan has been divided *then* they will think of establishing relations with Kurds.

The time sequence between the scenes in example 12 is that the event in S1 occurs previous to S2. *Inca* can be substituted by another Kurdish temporal connective like *paşan* without any change in the nature of the signalled relation, which is a sequential temporal relation.

*paşan (after, then, next)*

The council of Kurdish Academia suggests that *paşan* has "other allomorphs as *paş*, *dwai*, and *dwatr*" (2009: 197). However, these allomorphs are functionally different. These are not the same case as *inca*. The Kurdish opinion articles showed that *paş* and *dwai* are sentence adjuncts that are mainly used as time adverbials and not very commonly as temporal connectives, as there was only one example of *paş* in the data from the Kurdish opinion articles. The reason for this limitation is that they are predominantly used within phrases and that the phrases form part of a single sentence rather than linking two independent textual segments. Nonetheless, they do occur as temporal connectives. The translation data received from the Kurdish translators also confirmed that *paş* and *dwai* are translated into English as temporal connectives, as in example 14. As far as *paşan* and

are concerned, they can link two clauses or sentences in a temporal relation, which has two different time scenes. They can function as both a sentence adjunct, used as constituents of a single sentence and as temporal connectives, where there are two time scenes connected sequentially, as in example 13.

S1, paşan / dwatır S2

13) Şořşî Ailûl hełgirsa, paşan / dwatır dewlêtî Êran bo mebestî xoy pštîwani le bzûtnewei çêkdarî Kurdî Êraq kîrd.¹⁷⁴

Revolution-POSS Ailul happened, thenCONJ state-POSS Iran forPREP purpose-POSS 3P-RFX support fromPREP movement-POSS militant Kurds-POSS Iraq 3P-did.

The Ailul Revolution started, then the Iranian government, in its own interests, helped the Kurdish militant movement in Iraq.

Paş / Dwai S1, S2

14) Paş / Dwai damezrandnî Îhkûmeti herêmi Kûrdestan mlmlanê w nakokîekanî nêwan yekêti w parti destîpêkîrd.¹⁷⁵

AfterCONJ establishment-POSS government regional-POSS Kurdistan conflicts and disagreements-DEF-ART between PDK and PUK began-3P.

After the establishment of the Kurdistan Regional Government, conflicts and disagreements started between the PDK and PUK.

Paşan in example 13 and paş in 14 are both used as temporal connectives, connecting two separate time scenes in S1 and S2. However, the Kurdish data show that paşan always occurs in the initial position of S2 and not S1, whereas paş is more flexible and can occur either in the initial position of S1 or S2. This difference does not pose a problem in translation when paşan and paş are translated as after. Nonetheless, paş cannot be translated as then especially when it occurs in the initial position of S1. Moreover, paşan

can be substituted by *dwatır* and *paş* can be replaced by *dwai* without any change in the indicated relations between the segments. However, the substitution might not be permitted where *paş* and *dwai* are used as sentence adjuncts and not as temporal connectives, as in example 15.

15) **Paş** hεfteyek le wažokirdnî řêkewtenameke Bağda lêî paşgezbowe.\(^{176}\)

*After*CONJ *week-one* from*PREP *signing-POSS* agreement-*DEF-ART* Baghdad

*from-3S* withdrew.

One week after signing the agreement Baghdad withdrew from it.

*Paş* in example 15 is a sentence adjunct and has a single time reference in a single sentence. So, such an occurrence of *paş* cannot be regarded as a temporal connective, therefore it cannot be substituted by *paşan* or *dwatır*.

### 7.2 Terminal

The term "terminal" is adopted from Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification of temporal relations, in which the term refers to a sub-set of the "complex terminal relations" (1976: 266). Although they exemplify the terminal relation by conjunctives such as "until then, by this time, up until this time" they do not further explain how the relation works, nor do they provide a definition or examples. Moreover, unlike the Hallidayan framework, the internal / external aspects of temporal relations are not considered in the current study, because they could be present in each connective and therefore it is hard to differentiate between them in terms of the specific relation they signal in the text. As mentioned in the introduction, this study has modified Halliday and Hasan's classification in order to categorize the subtypes of temporal relations through a consideration of the semantic dimensions related to the representation of time scenes. However, they do refer to a subtype of temporal relations in which they state that "the presupposing sentence may be temporally cohesive not because it stands in some particular time relation to the presupposed sentence but because it marks the end of some process or series of processes" (1976: 263). However, in terms of Relevance Theory, the word "process" is rather unclear.

as it does not explain the specific constrains a connective may have on the segments of a text. Following Vendler, the term terminal is better explained in terms of accomplishments, as he states that "accomplishments are events which have duration and a definite end point" (2007: 152), whereas activities are ongoing events with intervals and duration. For instance, consider Vendler's examples "He is drawing." and "He is drawing a circle." (2007: 153). While the event of "drawing" has no set terminal point, as it is an activity "drawing a circle" does have a terminal point or a "culmination" (Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 262), i.e., and end point, because it is an accomplishment. In this sense, the terminal relation refers to a relation between two time spans in which the accomplishment of S1 or S2, as the position of the connective could be shifted, is dependent on the event mentioned in the until-clause (sentence) in English and in Kurdish in the ta-clause. So, for the terminal subcategory of temporal relations, there should be two different time scenes, in which there is an activity and an accomplishment.

**until**

Swart states that "until imposes restrictions on the aspectual class of the main clause they combine with: they only combine with durative sentences." (1996: 222). However, in such cases, until is used as a time adverbial and not as a connective. So, the durativity in the aspectual character of the sentence is not a straightforward criterion to recognise until when acting as a temporal connective. For instance, consider Swart's examples in 16a and 16b (1996: 223):

16a) Susan wrote until midnight.

16b) *Susan wrote a letter until midnight.

It is true that the durativity is obligatory for until to signal a temporal reference in the sentence as 16a. The reason why 16b is not acceptable is because the durativity in the aspectual character of the sentence is interrupted by the insertion of "a letter". However, until is used as a time adverbial in 16a and therefore it signals a single time reference in a single sentence rather than functioning as a connective to connect two time scenes. Similar to the temporal connective after, until can allow an additional relation to be implicitly embedded within the temporal relation. For instance, consider examples 17 and 18.
17) I paid £2,000 to one law firm to represent them until legal aid was arranged.177

18) Labour will not see power again until the party has won back its economic credibility.178

Until in the examples 17 and 18 signals the terminal temporal relation. It shows an endpoint or the borderline between two time scenes, and that both time scenes should comply with each other as S1 past S2 past as in 17 or S1 non-past S2 non-past as in 18. In addition to the temporality signalled by until, there is an implicit conditional relation that stands between S1 and S2 in both examples.

ta (until)

Ta has attracted the attention of several Kurdish researchers including Tofiq (2002), Shwani (2003), Abdullah (2003) and Rasul (2007). They refer to ta as a temporal subordinating particle, which shows the temporal reference in compound sentences. Unfortunately, none of these studies have provided a detailed account of the temporal connective ta. It is essential to notice that the Kurdish temporal connective ta occurs in different forms in the text, such as heta, takû, hetakû, tawekû, but they all signal the same relation as ta. According to Shwani these various forms of ta are the outcome of "the overlap between different Kurdish dialects" (2001: 141). However, the Kurdish data in the current study show that ta seems to be the dominant form in opinion articles. Moreover, data taken from Kurdish opinion articles show that ta is one of the most complicated linguistic items in Kurdish, because it may signal more than one relation (either temporal or causal). Also, it may be used either as a sentence adverbial in a similar case to English until and it could signal the terminal temporal relation like the English temporal connective until.

19) Türkîya ta ew katei ke xelatekei NATO pêşkeşi serok Barzani kira hemişe dûzmnayeti dekrd.179

177 Booker, Ch. 17/09/2011 http://www.telegraph.co.uk/comment/columnists/christopherbooker/8771232/Couple-denied-legal-help-while-lawyers-make-1m-removing-their-children.html
Turkey until CONJ that time when prize DEF-ART-POSS NATO presented PREP President Barzani done was PSV always enemy 3S-AGR was making.

Turkey always regarded President Barzani as an enemy until the time when he received the NATO Prize.

When *ta* occurs in the initial position of S1 as in example 19, it usually follows the subject of S1. However, it is very odd to find *until* in the initial position of S1 in English texts, as *until* usually occurs in the initial position of S2. Consequently, the original order of a Kurdish text as in example 19 should be altered when translated into English, in order to avoid stylistic disfluency. The Kurdish connective *ta* most frequently occurs with another temporal connective *èsta*, as in example 20.

S1 *ta èsta* S2 (until + now)

20) Maraton zor gringe behoy ewei kompanyayeki gewreye w êmeş *ta èsta* kompanyai weha gewreman nîye.180

Marathon very important 3S-AGR is because company INDF-ART big 3S is and we until now CONJ kompanyai like this DEM big 1P not NEG have 1P AGR.

Marathon is very important because it is a very big company and *until now* we do not have a company as big.

The Kurdish temporal connective *ta* has several allomorphs that have the same functions in signalling a temporal relation as *ta*. However, they might not be as flexible as *ta* in terms of their position in the sentence, such as *tawekû*, *hetakû* and *takû*. Nonetheless, all of these expressions can be substituted by *ta*, like *tawekû* in example 21 is replaced by *ta* without any change in the type of relation that is signalled in the text.

S1 *tawekû* S2

21) Debê çawe ëê bken *tawekû* zanyaryekeman bedest degat.181

---


Should-COND wait do-3P untilCONJ information-DEF-ART-1P in-hand arrive-PSV.

They should wait until we obtain the information.

*tawekâ* replaced by *ta*

Debê çaweëê bken *ta* zanyaryekeman bedest degat.

Should-COND wait do-3P untilCONJ information-DEF-ART-1P in-hand arrive-PSV.

They should wait until we obtain the information.

The substitution test verifies that *ta* and its allomorphs can all be translated into English as *until*. Although there is a sense of overlap between the combined time scenes via *until* and *ta*, these two temporal connectives actually indicate the durativity and periods of time that are separated by a terminal point of time between them. So, there is no sense of simultaneous events in terminal temporal relations. The simultaneous temporal relations are dealt with next in section 7.3.

### 7.3 Simultaneous

According to Maršic, the clause that contains the temporal connective is called "the temporal clause" and that it is always dependent on "the main clause" that precedes or follows (1999: 52). However, the time of the event expressed in the main clause could be subsequent to, previous to or simultaneous with the time of the event expressed in the temporal clause, i.e., the segment that contains the temporal connective. Sections 7.1 and 7.2 have already tackled two subtypes of the temporal relations: sequential and terminal. The current section will focus on the time relations that are simultaneous and the connectives that signal this type of relation.

The simultaneous temporal relation includes connectives that signal time relationship between two events within two textual segments (S1 and S2), in which there is a link between what has happened in the past, the current situation, or what is going to happen in the future. The time scenes in such cases are usually simultaneous, in that they overlap
with each other. Although Halliday and Hasan did not regard this type of relation as a distinct category of the temporal relations, they state that this type of relation is "interpreted as being accompanied by some other temporal component, e.g. 'then + in the interval' (meanwhile, at this time), 'then + moment of the time' (at this point / moment), and so on" (1976: 262). However, there is no specific connective in the Hallidayan framework which is described as a simultaneous connective. That is because they do not provide any example from actual data to represent these. The connectives in the current thesis are analysed in terms of the time reference endpoints attributed to them, i.e., the time scenes are indicated as happening in the past + until now, or present + ongoing. Therefore, a simultaneous relation is contrasted to both the sequential and terminal relations. It is different from the sequential relation, because the time scenes overlap and do not precede or follow each other, and it is different from the terminal relation, in that there is no end point defined for at least one of the time scenes. According to the data from the opinion articles, the connectives that signal the simultaneous relation in English include now, when, while, since and in Kurdish they are êsta, katêk, lewetei.

Now

*Now* is one of the multifunctional English conjunctives. It can be used as a continuative and as a temporal connective. As a continuative, *now* does not signal a temporal relation, as it is not used as an adverb of time, but as a cohesive device to mark the shift of topic in the text. As far as the usage of *now* as a temporal connective is concerned, Schiffrin claims that it is used to "indicate a speaker’s progression through a discourse which contains an ordered sequence of subordinating parts. It is also used to indicate the upcoming shift in talk, or when the speaker wants to negotiate the right to control what will happen next in talk" (1987:241). The latter part of Schiffrin's claim does not apply to *now* as a temporal connective, but it refers to a continuative *now*. The continuatives are defined by Halliday and Hasan that they are linguistic elements "which, although they do not express any particular one of the conjunctive relations, are used with a cohesive force in the text." (1976: 267). So, the connective *now* can function as both a temporal connective and as a continuative depending on its immediate context in the text. In this regard, Leech et al. state that a continuative *now* indicates that "I am changing the topic, and returning to something I was thinking about before," (2001: 304). Thus, a continuative *now* assists the reader to find the connection between an old topic, event or argument and a new one. For instance, consider examples 22 and 23.
S1. *Now* S2

22) The referendum put an end to that strategy. *Now*, the party’s appeal depends entirely upon its image as a plausible partner in power.¹⁸²

23) With energy bills rising in the UK, and green policies getting some of the blame, *now* might be a good time to start following that lead.¹⁸³

The uses of *now* in 22 and 23 are different, because in 22 it signals a connection between two different events regardless of their time reference, whereas in 23 *now* refers to two time references which are simultaneous. Thus, the relation signalled by *now* in example 22 is a cohesive one via a continuative and the one in example 23 is a simultaneous temporal relation, in which S1 time scene and S2 time scene are temporally related.

*ēsta* (*now*)

The word *ēsta* is remarkably similar to English *now*, as the translation data shows that it is suitably translated and it fits into the position occupied by *now* in the English text, as in example 24. *ēsta* is as multifunctional as *now*, because it can be used as a time adverbial, a continuative and a temporal connective. This section considers only the last of these uses. However, the multi-functionality of *now* could not cause problems in translation when *ēsta* is translated into English, because all of the Kurdish translators chose *now* as the most suitable equivalence for *ēsta*, as illustrated in examples 24 and 25.

S1, *ēsta* S2

24) Bo nmûne la sali 2003 le Jelewla řêżei Arab le 49% bûe, *ēsta* ew żmareye ziyadi kîrdûe bo le 77%.¹⁸⁴

*For example* CONJ *inPREP year 2003 inPREP Jalewla rate-POSS Arabs inPREP 49% was-3S, nowCONJ thisDEM number increase does-3S for 77%.*

For example, Arabs formed 49% of Jelewla's population in 2003; *now* this number has increased to 77%.

The use of êsta in example 24 is the typical occurrence of the temporal connective in Kurdish texts, according to the data from Kurdish opinion articles. The temporal connective in example 24 signals a temporal relation which links two time scenes as S1 past S2 present. Within the temporal relations, there is an indication of overlap between two separate time references and the temporal connective signals the comparison of the continuity stated in S1. Thus, the temporal connective in this case signals the simultaneous temporal relation.

There is another occasion where êsta is used not as a temporal connective but as a continuative that signals a cohesive relation between S1 and S2. For instance, the relation signalled in example 25 is not a temporal one, but it is a continuation of one event into another one. Halliday and Hasan (1976) claim that such usage of now, and therefore êsta, is not to be considered for the temporal relation, but rather as a different, cohesive relation. The responses from the translators suggest that this multifunctionality may not cause confusion in translation, as êsta and now have very similar functions, as presented in example 25. All 32 of the Kurdish translators chose êsta as the equivalence for now.

S1. Êsta S2

25) Xoşhalane, pênaçêt ew řudawane karigeryan beser kerti newt w ģazi Kûrdestaewe hebêt. Êsînzîkei 40 kompanyai biyanî serqali dozînewei bîra newt w ģaze la n瓮ke.\(^{185}\)

*Fortunately, look-does-notNEG-3S these events impact over sector-POSS oil and gas-POSS Kurdistan have-would-3P-AGR. in-nowCONJ nearly 40 companies-POSS foreign busy-POSS finding wells-POSS oil and gas inPREP area-DEF-ART.*

Fortunately, the Kurdistan Gas and Oil business does not seem to have been affected by these incidents. *Now*, there are nearly 40 foreign companies searching for oil and gas in the area.

**when, while**

The English temporal connectives *when* and *while* have much in common in terms of position and the aspectual characteristics of the verb phrases allowed in S1 and S2. Gröte states that both temporal connectives constrain the relevance between S1 and S2 in terms of "durativity" (2003: 370). However, the degree of durativity in the case of using *when* is different from the one of *while*. For instance, consider the textual segments linked together via *when* in examples 26 and 27.

**When S1, S2**

26) **When** the streets are on fire, the normal rules of law, order and social decency are suspended.\(^{186}\)

S1 **When** S2

27) Paramount's opposition could give it the upper hand **when** it goes head to head with rival studios this summer.\(^{187}\)

Examples 26 and 27 demonstrate that *when* can be used in the initial position of S1 and S2. The type of relation signalled in both examples is a simultaneous temporal relation. The simultaneity refers to the overlap between the two time scenes in S1 and S2. The action in the S1 is more of static than progressive, whereas, in case of *while* the segments immediately accompanying it, usually has a progressive aspect within the verb phrase.

As mentioned earlier, *while* signals the simultaneous temporal relation as in example 28. Also, it has the same functions, and occupies the same positions, as when. The only remarkable difference between them would be that *while* usually accompanies the segment that has a progressive aspect in the verb phrase, as in example 28.

28) **While** campaigning for the Democratic nomination in 2007, Barack Obama sought to sympathise with the farmers of Adel, Iowa, (population 4,653) over

---


the discrepancy between how much they earned for their crops and the price in the stores.\textsuperscript{188}

\textit{katêk (while, when)}

According to the translation data, the most suitable equivalent for both \textit{when} and \textit{while} in Kurdish is \textit{katêk}. \textit{Katêk} and \textit{ke} are both interchangeably used as translations of \textit{when}, whereas \textit{le katêkda} is used for \textit{while}, as suggested by 19 out of 32 translators. For instance, the temporal connective in example 29 can be substituted by \textit{ke} without any change of meaning or the type of the signalled relation, and \textit{ke} can be substituted by \textit{katêk}, again without any change in the type or relation that holds between S1 and S2 as in example 30. However, \textit{katêk} cannot be substituted by \textit{le katêkda (while)}, as it will produce an odd Kurdish text. Thus, the existence of a progressive aspect in the verb phrase of the accompanying segment is obligatory for the use of \textit{le katêkda}.

\textit{Katêk} S1, S2

\begin{itemize}
\item 29) \textit{Katêk} (\textit{ke}) (*\textit{le katêkda}) Emerika hat w deselati Baesî le Êraq lenawbrd, debûaye bâştîr bîryan le dahanê kirdawa nek ew wlate berew tûnêli tarikê bben.\textsuperscript{189}

\textit{When} America come\textit{PST} and authority-\textit{POSS} Ba'ath in\textit{PREP} Iraq destroy-\textit{PST}, should\textit{COND} better think-\textit{3P} of\textit{PREP} future done-\textit{3P-AGR} not\textit{NEG} this\textit{DEM} country to\textit{PREP} tunnel-\textit{POSS} darkness take-\textit{3P-should}.

\textit{When} the Americans put an end to the Ba'ath Regime in Iraq, they should have had a better plan for its future and not to leave it in the dark.

\item 30) \textit{Ke} (\textit{katêk}, *\textit{le katêkda}) xwendêkar bûm le heştakan, mn w zorbei hawrêyanm legel Pêşmerge be nhênî karman dekîrd.\textsuperscript{190}
\end{itemize}

\textsuperscript{188} Younge, G. 31/07/2011 \url{http://www.guardian.co.uk/commentisfree/2011/jul/31/us-reckless-right-forgot-participation}


\textsuperscript{190} Hamad, W. 25/05/2011, \url{http://xebat.net/detail_articals.php?id=8838&z=4&l=1}
When student was-1S in beginning-POSS eighties, 1S and most-POSS friends-POSS-1S withPREP Peshmarga withPREP secrecy work-1P-AGR were-doing-1P-AGR.

When I was a student in the eighties, most of my friends and I were working secretly with Peshmerga. Example 30 shows that ke can also signal a temporal relation in addition to signalling other conjunctive relations such as causal and adversative. However, there is a restriction on its position when signalling a temporal relation as it should occur in the initial position of S1 as in example 30.

Since

Since is a multifunctional connective that can signal a causal relation and a temporal relation. However, it is fairly easy to attribute either relation to it, as the contexts in which since is found to signal a causal or a temporal relation are distinct from each other. As a temporal connective, since is easily recognised by its immediate context (S1 and S2). Therefore, it should also be unproblematic when translated into Kurdish. The translation data verifies that the Kurdish equivalent for a causal since is çûnke and for a temporal since the equivalent is lewetei as in example 32. Besides, since, as a temporal connective, is as flexible as a causal connective, because it can occur both in the initial position of S1 or S2, as in examples 32 and 33.

Since S1, S2

32) Since he became leader in 2005, Cameron has sought to deny where he comes from, which is specifically the English gentry.

S1 since S2

33) It is barely six months since David Cameron was condemning Hosni Mubarak for human rights abuses against Egyptian protesters.

191 Peshmerga: the Kurdish national armed forces.
Since in examples 32 and 33 signals a simultaneous temporal relation. It is different from the temporal connective when, in that it signals an overlap between two time scenes and the time scope extends from past to present and possibly to future. Thus, the temporal relation signalled by since is actually heading forward in time, whereas the one signalled by when is heading backward in time.

lewetei (since)

To the best of my knowledge, the Kurdish temporal connective lewetei has not been mentioned in Kurdish sources. Thus, the translation data have played a significant role in verifying the functions of lewetei as a temporal connective. The translation data suggest that it is the most suitable equivalent for since, as a temporal connective, in Kurdish is lewetei, because 28 out of 32 translators translated lewetei as since.

34) Xelkî dîyan xoşê be pêro ze bnyatnerekan be taibetî lewetei salî 2003 ke îrêmekei Saddam be çokdadra.

People heart-poss-3p nice-are-3p-agr with project constructings-def-art especially since year 2003 that regime-def-art-poss Saddam with prep knee-made-3s-was.

People are happy with the construction projects since Saddam's regime was defeated in 2003.

Unlike since, lewetei does not signal any other relation apart from a temporal relation. To be more specific, lewetei signals the simultaneous temporal relation based on the data from Kurdish opinion articles, and the translation responses received from the Kurdish translators.

7.4 Conclusions

Chapter Seven has provided an overview of the temporal relations in English and Kurdish, as the fourth and final category of the conjunctive relations in both languages. Similar to Chapters Four, Five and Six, the items listed in Halliday and Hasan’s (1976) classification of conjunctive relations have been adopted to establish initial paradigms of correspondences between and among the temporal connectives in English and Kurdish. However, the original classification had to be amended in order to set up an alternative categorisation of the temporal connectives that was better suited to the written data under scrutiny and to avoid the ambiguities implicit in the Hallidayan system. Thus, the temporal relations in this chapter have been divided into three main sub-categories of sequential, terminal and simultaneous connectives. This classification is mainly based on the scope and nature of the time scenes represented in the two textual segments combined by the connectives. That is, the categories distinguish between occasions where there are two independent time scenes which may precede or follow one another (sequential relations), be separated by an indication of a temporal endpoint in S1 or S2 (terminal relations), or the time scenes may overlap each other (simultaneous relations).

The translation data showed that there are significant similarities and differences between English and Kurdish temporal connectives and among connectives of the same language. For instance, the English temporal connectives then and next are very similar to each other, whereas when and while are different from each other although they both signal simultaneous temporal relations; the former indicates an overlap between two simple aspectual verb phrases but the latter indicates overlap between a simple and a progressive aspectual verb phrases in S1 and S2. Moreover, unlike the causal relations the shift of the position of a temporal connective from initial position of S1 to S2 does not affect the type of the relation being signalled between the segments.
CHAPTER EIGHT: CONCLUSIONS

8.0 Introduction

This thesis has contributed to the field of knowledge about English and Kurdish connectives and conjunctive relations in the argumentative type of the written genre: newspaper opinion articles. The contributions fall into four main areas. First, the thesis has set out a classification of connectives that signal conjunctive relations in Kurdish. Chapters Four, Five, Six and Seven in the current thesis presented the individual sub-categories of the classification of connectives for additive, adversative, causal-conditional and temporal relations that are presented in combination as the full classification here (see Table 9). Second, the refinements of the Hallidayan framework allowed me to reflect on how each subcategory of the classification was further refined according to specific criteria, for example the semantic content of S1 and S2 in additive relations, polysemy for the adversative relations, textual sequence for the causal-conditional category and the time scene sequences for the temporal relations. Third, the combined methodology sheds further light on the key features of the connectives as a form of discourse marker. This has brought together a new process of analysis which combined the insights from systemic functional grammar with Relevance Theoretic framework to further develop Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification of conjunctive relations. Finally, the fuller understanding of Kurdish connectives provided by the thesis has implications for translation. These contributions are further explained in the following sections.

8.1 Classification of English and Kurdish connectives

8.1.1 Taxonomies

One of the contributions of this research was to identify the connectives that signal conjunctive relations in English and Kurdish newspaper opinion articles and to categorise them by using a modified model of Halliday and Hasan's (1976) classification of conjunctive relations and connectives. The raw frequency of the occurrence of each connective is presented in order to show the frequency of using each individual in each language. As mentioned in Chapter Three this study uses qualitative rather than
quantitative methodology; however, the frequencies had important implications for the translation task in the current study. There were interesting findings between the frequencies of connectives and translation challenges (See section 8.2.2). Table 10 presents the connectives that signal conjunctive relations in English and Kurdish classified according to the four sub-categories, namely additive, adversative, causal-conditional and temporal.

Table 10 Conjunctive relations and connectives in English and Kurdish

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Relation</th>
<th>Subtypes</th>
<th>English Connectives</th>
<th>Frequency out of 38572 tokens</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Kurdish Connectives</th>
<th>Frequency out of 36988 tokens</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Simple</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>297</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>421</td>
<td>1.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>as well as</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>herweha</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>or</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>ya(n)</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nor</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>ne...ne</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Complex</td>
<td>furthermore</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>serbari</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>in addition</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.007</td>
<td>sereňai</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>besides</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>cige le</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>also</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>in other words</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td>be wateyeki tir</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>that is</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>bew manaye</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>i mean</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>wate</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>for example</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>bo nimûne</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>for instance</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.007</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>thus</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.007</td>
<td>bem jore</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison</td>
<td>similarly</td>
<td>similarly</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>herweha</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Adversative</td>
<td>Contrast</td>
<td>Causal-Conditional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>by contrast</td>
<td>in fact</td>
<td>because</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denial</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>actually</td>
<td>so</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yet</td>
<td>however</td>
<td>then</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(al)though</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>therefore</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>despite this</td>
<td></td>
<td>consequently</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>thus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>in order to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>so that</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adversative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrast</td>
<td>in fact</td>
<td>however</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actually</td>
<td>but</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correction</td>
<td>instead</td>
<td>but</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>rather</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>at least</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>i mean</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancellation</td>
<td>except</td>
<td>any way</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nevertheless</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>but</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

|-term| frequency| probability|-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>by contrast</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yet</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(al)though</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>despite this</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in fact</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actually</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>however</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instead</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>0.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rather</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at least</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i mean</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>except</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any way</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nevertheless</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>0.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>then</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>therefore</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consequently</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thus</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in order to</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so that</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Non-iconic causal</td>
<td>Iconic conditional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>since</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>as long as</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>because</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>for</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in order to</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>since</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>as long as</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>if</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>even if</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>otherwise</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lest</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unless</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>if</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>even if</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unless</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>then</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>next</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>after</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>before</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>until</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>now</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>when</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>since</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total numbers</strong></td>
<td><strong>English</strong></td>
<td>1033</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 10 shows the paradigm of correspondences between the English and Kurdish connectives that signal similar conjunctive relations in both languages. The equivalences go both directions and documented from the translation task. This summary presents in one place the full range of Kurdish connectives (as evidenced from the opinion articles in this study) and their English equivalences. As this table shows, there is no one-to-one mapping between the English and Kurdish connectives; for example the connective *but* is translated into four different Kurdish connectives such as *belam*, *keçi*, *be pêçawanewe* and *belkû*. Conversely, the Kurdish connectives *çûnke* can have two interpretations in English as *because* and *since*. Also, some Kurdish connectives can fall into more than one category; for example *leber ewe* which can be either *because* or *for* which signal two different subtypes of the causal relations. Additionally, some Kurdish connectives can signal different categories of the conjunctive relations, as *ke* (conditional and temporal). These complexities suggest that for some connectives, at least, there is no isomorphic mapping between the lexical item and the semantic relation being signalled. Thus, table 10 should not be regarded as a glossary but rather as a framework which alerts translators to the various facets of these connectives that they should consider in their work. This is despite the claims made by Sanders et al (1992: 2) and Kehler (2002: 12) whose assumption of the one-to-one relation between relations and connectives was found untenable when applied to the full range of conjunctive relations and connectives scrutinized in this thesis. Further observations about this range of connectives is also made in the next section, including the frequencies of each connective out of the total number of tokens from 40 English (38572 words) and 40 Kurdish (36988 words) online newspaper opinion articles, summarized in the table above.

### 8.1.2 Frequencies

Grouping together the English and Kurdish connectives according to the Hallidayan classification of conjunctive relations allows us to see certain trends in the wider use of the frequencies of connectives in each subcategory. Previous research by Al Kohlani (2010) and Dalili and Destjerdi (2013) attested that the choice, frequency and distribution of connectives differ according to the type of text and the language in which the connectives operate. However, findings in the current thesis suggest that there is little difference between English and Kurdish in terms of connective usage in opinion articles, in which English connectives formed 2.7% and the Kurdish connectives 2.6% of the total number of
tokens in the 40 articles from each language. However, looking more closely at the subcategories in turn, further differences between the two languages emerge. For example, although the frequency of additive connectives in Kurdish (1.5%) exceeds the amount of additive connectives in English (1.04%), in other categories of conjunctive relations like adversative and causal relations the usage of connectives in English is higher than in Kurdish (See Figure 3).

![Bar chart showing raw frequencies of English and Kurdish connectives](image)

**Figure 3: Frequencies of English and Kurdish connectives**

The *additive* connectives from both languages formed an average of 2.5% of the total number of the tokens which is much higher than the percentage of the total number of the other three subcategories combined, such as the adversative, causal-conditional and temporal connectives. The temporal connectives were the least frequently used connectives among the four subcategories of conjunctive relations in both languages, which were only 0.75%. The reason for this discrepancy in the frequencies among the four types of connectives could be related to the specific nature of the text type studied in this thesis. For example, the results of the pilot study carried out in preparation for the detailed analysis of the opinion articles showed that temporal connectives were more frequent than the other types of connective in narrative discourse. Nonetheless, the frequencies do not imply that the most frequently occurring connectives are the most problematic ones in translation, for example. Indeed, the differences between the subcategories of connectives do not stop at their comparative frequency. The closer analysis of the subcategories also suggested different kinds of revisions that might be made to produce a more nuanced model of the Hallidayan framework of connectives.

232
8.2 Refinements of Halliday and Hasan's classification of conjunctive relations

The refinements to Halliday and Hasan's classification of conjunctive relations allowed me to reflect on how each subcategory of the conjunctive relations when analysed separately according to specific criteria, each brought to light a different characteristic of connectives. The analysis of each subcategory needed certain additional criteria in order to further differentiate between the types and functions of each connective. The refinements of Halliday and Hasan's classification on the macro and micro levels have helped clarify several limitations of their original model. In particular, the analysis of the connectives under each subcategory has been refined according to specific characteristics, namely:

- the semantic content of S1 and S2 in additive relations;
- the range of polysemy and RT's procedural account for the adversative relations;
- the textual sequence between S1 and S2 in causal-conditional relations;
- the time scenes in S1 and S2 in the temporal relations.

As the previous chapters have shown, each of these facets has helped create a more fine-grained classification that was not only useful for connectives in the English language but was also necessary to outline the connectives in Kurdish language. The ways in which the Hallidayan subcategories have been refined each shed further light on a particular key characteristic of discourse markers in general and connectives in particular.

8.2.1 Additive connectives and relations

The macro level in the classification of additive relations remained considerably unchanged and did not receive modifications, as the original classification focused on the semantic content of the textual segments connected by the additive connectives in a way that was fully applicable to the data considered in this study. Consequently, I did not find a better way of classification for the additive relations at the macro level (that is, the Hallidayan categories were still employed). However, on the micro level, there were considerable refinements considering the inclusion and exclusion of certain types of connectives. For instance, the original classification included all types of conjunctions and did not make differences between a connective "and" and a conjunction "and", a
connective "or" and a conjunction "or" (Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 238), whereas the modified classification included only the elements that signalled a semantic relation between two independent textual segments which also had two separate predicates. The current thesis differentiated between connectives and conjunctions, in which the former links two separate and independent textual segments, while the latter links two grammatical constituents of a single sentence, in which there is only one textual segment. In addition, the application of Relevance Theory to the additive connectives revealed that there is a great deal of subjectivity in the "emphatic" element in the additive relations and connectives in the Hallidayan framework (Halliday and Hasan, 1976: 245). Chapter Four tried to shed light on this element of subjectivity through the use of Relevance Theory's procedural accounts for the additive connectives.

8.2.2 Adversative connectives and relations

Previous research by Schiffrin (1987), Fraser (1999), and Blakemore (2002) drew attention to the relatively low referential content of discourse markers. Nonetheless, there is still potential for connectives to be differentiated on the grounds of their polysemy. Across the different categories, the problem of polysemy occurred to a greater and lesser extent. The aspect of polysemy played a more important role in exploring the adversative relations and connectives, and taking account of this polysemy allowed a richer and more nuanced differentiation of the adversative connectives.

Adversative connectives like but are more polysemous than the other types of connectives like and, because, next. However, the range of polysemy of the adversative connectives was not considered in Halliday and Hasan's earlier classification. In addition, the complexity of the connectives like but could not be noticed easily in the original classification (because of the top-down focus on categories), but the translation technique of equivalences as well as Relevance Theoretic framework demonstrates the polysemy of each adversative connective (thus working to the categories from a bottom-up analysis of particular lexical items). Thus, the properties of adversative connectives (which illustrate the varied ways in which particular connectives behave) in the modified classification may be less problematic for translators and enable future research to work on these connectives. The combined approach to the analysis of adversative connectives was particularly helpful, because on the one hand, the principles found in the framework of Relevance Theory
accounted for the interpretations of the connectives (procedural meanings) rather than their actual semantic values, as in case of the connective but and the four different interpretations: belam, be pêçewanewe, belkû and keçi. On the other hand, translation outlined the network of interpretations of each connective in each language and compared them to each other.

8.2.3 Causal-conditional connectives and relations

The third sub-category of the conjunctive relations in the Hallidayan framework is the causal-conditional relations. The criteria used to analyse and modify the causal-conditional relations were different from the criteria used to analyse the other two sub-categories mentioned earlier. The current study used three criteria to explore the causal-conditional relations and connective in both languages, namely iconicity, semantico-pragmatic status of the segments S1 and S2, and the position of the connectives; whether initial position of S1 or S2. The criterion of iconicity was adopted from Sanders et al’s (1992: 2) cognitive parameter of "Order of Segments", in which the causal and the conditional relations were divided according to the order of the segments, as iconic referring to S1 cause S2 effect and S1 condition S2 result. The non-iconic relation included the order of segments such as S1 effect S2 cause and S1 result S2 condition. The other two criteria were very closely related to each other, in which the semantico-pragmatic status of the segments related to the content of the segments; whether S1 is restricted to cause and S2 to effect or vice versa and whether S1 is restricted to condition and S2 to result or vice versa. The application of the Relevance Theoretic framework involved the position of the connectives, because the connectives had constraints on the order of the segments depending on the characteristics of each connective. For instance, connectives like because only occur with the cause segment of the text, thus signalled iconic causal relation when occurring in the initial position of S1 and the non-iconic causal relation when occurring in the initial position of S2. Based on these characteristics, the modified classification of the causal-conditional relations included the following:

1- Iconic causal relation (S1 cause- S2 effect)
2- Non-iconic causal relation (S1 effect- S2 cause)
3- Iconic conditional (S1 condition- S2 result)
4- Non-iconic conditional (S1 result- S2 condition)
8.2.4 Temporal connectives and relations

The fourth property of the connectives which was adopted as a characteristic to recognise temporal relations is the succession of the time scenes in S1 and S2 in a text. Existing research on English temporal relations seem to agree on one fact that there is one-way direction of "the arrow of time pointing from past to future" (Maršić, 2011: 19). Therefore, they agree on a linear model of time, in which time provides a baseline reference point in which events can be placed in order of occurrence. Thus, people can establish that one event occurred subsequent to, previous to or simultaneous with another one. However, this distinction among the subtypes of the conjunctive relations is not made explicit in Halliday and Hasan (1976). Instead, they relied on the distinction between external and internal aspects of the temporal relations. This distinction might be important when dealing with connectives in spoken modes, in which the internal aspects of the relation refers to the actual structure of the text, but the internal aspect refers to speaker involvement in sending the message through to the hearer. However, the external / internal distinction does not play a remarkable comparable role in written contexts, because the communication is asynchronous. As a result, there is no clear distinction between time adverbials that function as sentential adjuncts and time adverbials that function as temporal connectives in the Hallidayan framework. The modified classification depends on the link between time scenes and textual segments, i.e., the temporal scenes are embedded in the textual segments. This characteristic helped me differentiate between the time adverbials that have only a syntactic function, i.e. act as a grammatical constituent of the sentence (sentential adjuncts) and the time adverbials that link two separate textual segments and create cohesion in the text, i.e. act as temporal connectives. For instance, the word after in example 1 is a temporal connective and in example 2 it is a time adverbial (not a temporal connective).

1) The militiamen were a mopping-up force who occupied the territory after air strikes had cleared the way.\textsuperscript{195} \hspace{1cm} S1 temporal connective \hspace{1cm} S2

2) American diplomats were taken hostage in Iran after the Islamic revolution. \textsuperscript{196}

\textit{One temporal scene and one textual segment}

\textsuperscript{195} Patrick Cockburn, 25/03/2012 \url{http://www.independent.co.uk/opinion/commentators/patrick-cockburn-the-attempt-to-topple-president-assad-has-failed-7584493.html}

\textsuperscript{196} Con Coughlin, 12/09/2012, \url{http://www.telegraph.co.uk/news/worldnews/middleeast/syria/9538493/The-Arab-Spring-turns-sour-for-America.html}
The distinction between 1 and 2 reflects the characteristics used to modify Halliday and Hasan’s classification in terms of the temporal connectives. That is, there are time adverbials that function only as sentential adjuncts and other time adverbials that go beyond this grammatical function and act as a temporal connective to link two separate textual segments and have two different time scenes.

8.3 Concluding remarks on the methodology

The current thesis developed and tested a methodology which has brought together SFL and RT, and thus analysed conjunctive relations and the connectives which signal them in a novel way. The combined method of analysis paved the way for the necessary modifications on Halliday and Hasan’s classification of conjunctive relations. Halliday and Hasan’s classification, whilst useful, was inevitably shaped by the systemic principle of creating top-down groupings of lexical items according to macro-level semantic categories. The current study has integrated the Hallidayan framework of conjunctive relations with the relevance theory's account of connectives to analyse the connectives. The reason for the combination of the two frameworks is that analysis would go beyond the grammatical functions of connectives. Also, the study would extend the analysis in order to explore the main characteristics and the semantic and pragmatic functions of the connectives. Consequently, these characteristics would play crucial roles in their recognition as a subset of discourse markers in English and Kurdish. The rationale for using RT’s framework is that it takes into account the contextuality of the connectives and the model of the readers' projected interpretation.

Another aspect of the methodology in the current thesis was the use of translation as an analytical tool. Translation was necessitated because of the comparative nature of the study and the need for finding Kurdish equivalences for the English connectives. It has also been a useful tool for me because it has brought to light the main characteristics of the connectives like polysemy, textual position and textual sequence: features that were sometimes manifest differently in the two languages. The translation technique I used to help the analysis and deciding on the Kurdish equivalences was paradigm of correspondences. This technique proved able to create a network of connectives within and between both languages. Previous research like Aijmer et al (2006) and Chesterman (1997) utilized this technique to find possible relationships between specific connectives from two
languages with the focus on one of the languages. Nonetheless, the present study suggests that the paradigm of correspondences could be deployed to study connectives between two or more languages and at the same time it could be used to understand the connectives from all the participating languages, such as English and Kurdish in the current thesis. That is each language would play two roles one as a source language\textsuperscript{197} (SL) and the other as target language\textsuperscript{198} (TL).

**8.4 Implications for translation**

Each of chapters four, five, six and seven has highlighted specific issues that may cause challenges for translators seeking to find equivalences between English and Kurdish connectives. Some problems are more pressing in that they were found to cause more problems than others for the translators who supplied material for this study. Table 10 presents the total percentages of the number of Kurdish translators who made mistakes in translating connectives from English into Kurdish and vice versa for each of the different types of conjunctive relation.

**Table 11 Percentages of the number of Kurdish translators who made less frequent translation choices (n = 32)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Additive</th>
<th>Adversative</th>
<th>Causal-conditional</th>
<th>Temporal</th>
<th>Average less frequent choices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>English - Kurdish</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>54%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>74%</td>
<td>57%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kurdish - English</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>23%</td>
<td>57%</td>
<td>46%</td>
<td>34%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average percentage of the number of translators who made less frequent choices</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>38.5%</td>
<td>68.5%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>45.5%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As presented in Table 10, the number of the Kurdish translators who made mistakes in the translation of the causal-conditional connectives and the additive connectives suggests that additive connectives caused less problems in translation, whereas causal-conditional

\textsuperscript{197} Source Language: A translation term referring to the original language.

\textsuperscript{198} Target Language: A translation term referring to the language to which the translation is conducted.
connectives posed more challenges for the Kurdish translators. These challenges are more prevalent particularly when translating from English into Kurdish. The direction of translation, whether from English into Kurdish or vice versa, is of particular interest here, as previous research in translation studies suggested that translating from a second language to mother tongue should be more efficient and easier to undertake. Dickins states that "translator training normally focuses on translation into the mother tongue, because higher quality is achieved in that direction than in translating into a foreign language" (2005: 2). It is common sense that translation into the first language provides translators with certain advantages such as knowledge of grammatical, syntactic, semantic and lexical aspects of their mother tongue, as they acquire these linguistic aspects naturally. Nonetheless, the results of the translation survey in the current thesis suggested that lack of profound knowledge of discourse markers in general and connectives in particular could cause translators to render poor translations and make weak choices even when translating from a foreign language to their mother tongue.

8.5 Future work

Although connectives are numerous and their functions are varied, they all have a central role in helping writers to direct their readers. Thus, connectives should not be viewed as meaningless and redundant but as vital components of speech which are "conventionalised, learned expressions that provide information about how the content of messages should be interpreted" (Fox Tree, 2010: 270). The current thesis was limited to identify English and Kurdish connectives in online newspaper opinion articles and analysed the grammatical functions and semantic properties of these expressions in original English and Kurdish texts as well as in translation. Although this study dealt with connectives in one type of genre (namely, the argumentative text type found in opinion articles), it is only the first step in the study of Kurdish connectives specifically and discourse markers in general. As such, it paves the way for future comparative studies between English and Kurdish languages.

I have looked at a limited range of written materials, but future studies could give attention to the nature of conjunctive relations and the characteristics of connectives in wider samples of written materials such as comparing English and Kurdish published works, literary texts, EFL writing skills and professional communication as business letters.
Literary writings form a substantial amount of written Kurdish and could be compared with various English literary texts; for instance, novel and drama. In particular, these narrative texts would be fruitful sources for looking at the temporal relations and connectives in both languages. Moreover, the study of text organisation could benefit from looking at connectives in EFL students’ writing and postgraduate theses. Future research could examine connectives in Kurdish EFL classrooms to find out the frequency of using connectives by Kurdish students and to look at the pedagogical aspects of text organisation. This is important for cross-cultural communication because connectives could pose challenges for L2 writers. According to Mauaranen (1993), cultural differences in the usage of connectives may result in unintentionally inefficient writing on the part of L2 writers. The results of such studies, including the current research, may be used by teachers in order to inform EFL/ESL students of the differences that occur in the usage of connectives between native and non-native writers. This knowledge could help foreign/second language writers; especially Kurdish writers to produce more effective texts by using connectives in a more efficient manner and could help them reduce overuse or misuse of connectives. Ultimately, future studies could be carried out on the use of connectives in business letters to compare the nature and types of connectives between English and Kurdish business letters and other written communications means, in order to compare the degree of formality in written communication between the two languages.

Another area of comparative research concerning connectives would be to look at spoken genres of different kinds incorporating dialogic and monologic examples with different degrees of formality such as political speeches, TV and radio broadcast. The use of connectives in Kurdish spoken modes could be compared to the use of items that execute similar functions in other languages. Because of the limitations of the current study, other genres as those in the spoken mode and conversational discourses were not considered. The main reason for this limitation was the fact that there are many variables to deal with in the varieties of spoken Kurdish, and thus the data could not be manageable for mapping out an initial comparison of the connectives in Kurdish and English. However, with the classification of Kurdish connectives created in the current thesis, it may now be possible to identify how these lexical items behave in other modes. Indeed, while there is some previous research on Kurdish spoken modes like Shwani, 2001; Tofiq, 2003 and Abdullah, 2003. These studies have looked at individual connectives but did not take the analysis to the point of conducting a full and detailed analysis of a group of connectives, as the ones
that signal conjunctive relations. Of course, further research is needed in order to reach firm conclusions about the Kurdish connectives, and that could mean a detailed study on connectives that signals conjunctive relations in a specific type of Kurdish spoken mode.

Finally, despite the importance of connectives in text production and perception, they are rarely investigated in Kurdish research literature as a linguistic phenomenon. Therefore, the areas of future investigation regarding connectives are very wide.
APPENDIX ONE: ABBREVIATION OF MORPHOLOGICAL GLOSSES (LEIPZIG)

1  first person
2  second person
3  third person
A  agent-like argument of canonical transitive verb
ABL  ablative
ABS  absolutive
ACC  accusative
ADJ  adjective
ADV  adverb(ial)
AGR  agreement
ALL  allative
ANTIP  antipassive
APPL  applicative
ART  article
AUX  auxiliary
BEN  benefactive
CAUS  causative
CLF  classifier
COM  comitative
COMP  complementizer
COMPL  completive
COND  conditional
COP  copula
CVB  converb
DAT  dative
DECL  declarative
DEF  definite
DEM  demonstrative
DET  determiner
DIST  distal
DISTR  distributive
DU  dual
DUR  durative
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ERG</td>
<td>ergative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXCL</td>
<td>exclusive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOC</td>
<td>focus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>genitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMP</td>
<td>imperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INCL</td>
<td>inclusive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IND</td>
<td>indicative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDF</td>
<td>indefinite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INF</td>
<td>infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>instrumental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTR</td>
<td>intransitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPFV</td>
<td>imperfective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRR</td>
<td>irrealis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N-</td>
<td>non- (e.g. NSG nonsingular, NPST nonpast)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEG</td>
<td>negation, negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMLZ</td>
<td>nominalizer/nominalization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>nominative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBJ</td>
<td>object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBL</td>
<td>oblique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>patient-like argument of canonical transitive verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASS</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFV</td>
<td>perfective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSS</td>
<td>possessive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRED</td>
<td>predicative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRF</td>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROG</td>
<td>progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROH</td>
<td>prohibitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROX</td>
<td>proximal/proximate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PST</td>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTCP</td>
<td>participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PURP</td>
<td>purposive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>question particle/marker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUOT</td>
<td>quotative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECP</td>
<td>reciprocal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REFL</td>
<td>reflexive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REL</td>
<td>relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RES</td>
<td>resultative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>single argument of canonical intransitive verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBJ</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBJV</td>
<td>subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOP</td>
<td>topic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TR</td>
<td>transitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>vocative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX TWO: LIST OF THE ENGLISH AND KURDISH OPINION ARTICLES


Editorial (2013) *Only a clear vision will provide a clear mandate*. The Telegraph [Online]. Available at: [http://www.telegraph.co.uk/comment/telegraph-view/9782026/Only-a-clear-vision-will-provide-a-clear-mandate.html](http://www.telegraph.co.uk/comment/telegraph-view/9782026/Only-a-clear-vision-will-provide-a-clear-mandate.html) (Accessed: 06/01/2013)


Othman, A. S. (2012) *Comeke prbu wa lei deřzê* (Enough is enough). Sbeiy [Online]. Available at:


BIBLIOGRAPHY


Aristotle (350 AD) *Metaphysics*. VIII 1045a–b


Sanders, T. and Noordman, L. (2000) The role of coherence relations and their linguistic markers in text processing. Discourse Processes, 29, pp. 37-60. Available at:


274


curricula and materials. (pp. 105-120). Strasbourg/Graz: Council of Europe/European Centre for Modern Languages


